

UNIVERSITY OF MASSACHUSETTS
LIBRARY
SPECIAL
COLLECTIONS

SB
97
H57
1608

MASSACHUSETTS
AGRICULTURAL
COLLEGE

No. 30743 DATE 3-20-1909
SOURCE Hort. depart.
~~580.65~~
~~H55~~

~~TREASURE ROOM~~

MASSACHUSETTS
AGRICULTURAL
COLLEGE
LIBRARY

MASSACHUSETTS
AGRICULTURAL
COLLEGE
LIBRARY

MASSACHUSETTS
AGRICULTURAL
COLLEGE
LIBRARY

91464

MASSACHUSETTS
AGRICULTURAL
COLLEGE
LIBRARY

mdlo

MASSACHUSETTS
AGRICULTURAL
COLLEGE
LIBRARY

THE Arte of Gardening,

wherunto is added much neceſſarie matter, with a number of Secrets: and the Phiſicke helps belonging to each hearb, which are eaſily prepared.

Heer-vnto is annexed two proper Treatiſes, the firſt Intituled *The meruailous gouerment, propertie, & benefite of Bees, with the rare ſecrets of the Honie and waxe:* the other, *The yearly Coniectures, verie neceſſary for Husband-men.*

To theſe is likewiſe ioyned a Treatiſe of the Arte of Graffing and planting of trees.

Gathered by Thomas Hill, *Citizen of* London.



LONDON,
Imprinted by Edward Allde.
1608.

The Authours out of which this worke of Gardening is gathered.

Sotion a Greeke writer.
Florentinus a Greeke writer.
C. Plinius.
M. Cato.
Iunius Columella.
M. Varro.
Palladius Rutilius.
Ariſtomachus.
Theophraſtus.
Ariſtotle.
Didimus.
Dioſcorides.
Democritus.
Galenus.
Paul Aegineta.
Petrus Andr.
Mathiolus.
Conſtan. Cæſar.
Hieronimus Cardanus.
And ſundry others.

TREASURE ROOM

To the right worshipfull Sir *Henry* Seamer Knight, *Thomas Hill* wisheth all wealth and felicitie.

WHen I had ended these trauels and labors of mine (right Worshipful Sir) I called to remembrance the two notable sayings of the well learned and worthy Philosopher *Xenophon*, who did not onely confesse, but rather with other wise men did agree, that that Arte was moste commendable, and of all men moste worthy to be allowed & accepted, which to a common wealth brought any kinde of profit and commoditie. And because this Art of Gardning is of it selfe verry profitable, and bringeth moste necessarie commodities, both to Cities and Townes, therefore in my simple iudgement, it deserueth no small commendation. The beginning of it is very ancient, so that of no new inuention, but long ago found out, first by dame Nature, & after continued and augmented by the dilligent care and vigilant paines of the wise & skilfull Gardeners, by whose industrie & meanes, it is now growen to such perfection, as I thinke it therefore moste worthie to be accounted amongst other such good artes, as euery common wealth hath need of. And although it may appeare somewhat inferiour to other artes, yet notwithstanding the same is as profitable, & altogither as necessary as the others are: forsomuch as this is so linked and chained to the noble artes, both of Physicke and Surgerie, as by no meanes possible it may be seperated from the other, but rather as a dayly handmaiden, continually serueth them both, the which two (at this day) are had

30743

in no smal reputation & renown, & that not without good cause, for so much as no common-wealth can be without them, & because these two cannot wel be performed without this third, therfore men haue cõtinually sought to bring it to perfection. And first the ancient Husbandmen tooke great paines therein: after them the learned Philosophers & other wise men, which from time to time haue obserued & noted such notable lessons & instructions, as (at this day) are common among them in all countries. This art being once knowne, and the vse so necessarie esteemed, hath caused wise men by a kinde of common consent, to place Gardens nere vnto Cities, Townes & Villages, as a storehouse and place, wherin might be kept, aswel al such hearbs as are fit for the helth & preseruation of mans body, as also al mãner of pleasant floures & delectable herbs as are daily sought for and required of the common people: and this Art now, what long experience, & long continuance of painful men, in trying and searching the condition and nature of euery ground, and their aptnes in bearing such seeds as should be sowen therin, is growen to such a perfectiõ, that now euery good Gardener can tell what ground is fit for such and such seeds, how it ought to be digged, dũged, & cast orderly into beds, and after the seeds are sowen, how they ought to be watered & weeded, that therby the plants in cõming vp might the better prosper and come forward. Besides these necessary points, in ordering the ground, in chusing seedes apt for euery soile, and in obseruing the time fit for sowing, they haue left behinde them certaine meanes and wayes to auoid and driue away al such beasts, wormes, flies, with the like, as commonly annoy & hurt the workmanship of Gardeners: yea such cunning, wit and wisdom is conteined in this Art of Gardning, that the wise and mighty Emperour *Diocletian*, through the delight and pleasure he tooke therin (as writeth *Aelius Spartianus*) after he had reigned 18. yeres,

left

left for a season the whole gouernmēt & rule of the empire: & forsaking the court, went vnto a mean house, hauing a garden adioyning therto, where he with his proper, hands, both sowed, set, & weeded the hearbs of his gardē: which kind of life so pleased him, that hardlye hee was intreated to take vpon him again the gouernment of the Empire, so much did this quiet life & beautie of the Garden please him. This example may moue all other meaner men to haue the like felicitie & pleasure in Gardening, seeing so noble an Emperor chose rather to forsake his regal authoritie and power, and still to continue in that state of quiet life, affirming it farre better and happier estate to liue quietly among the faire & pleasant floures of the Garden, then to rule, & be daily called on & troubled with the serious and weightie affaires of the Empire. But heere I will stay my pen, least I seem ouer tedious vnto yont worship in so smal a Treatise, desiring your goodnes to pardon my bold attempt, and rather to behold the earnest zeale & affection of my willing mind born towards you, then to consider the simplenes of the style, and want of eloquence. I should haue been ashamed (right worshipfull sir) to haue ventured so far, as to dedicate this my third increase vnto your goodnes, were it not that the argument of the matter is both profitable and pleasant to be read: wherin is taught a number of worthie secrets, in the sowing and setting of the moste plants, with the great commodities they serue for in the vse of Phisick: & were it not againe that I fully perswade my selfe, that your worshipwill rather accept the minde of the writer, then the manner of writing. Thus praying almightie God to send your worship long health, and the yeres of the worthy *Nestor*.

Your most humble,
Thomas Hill

The

The preface to the Reader and dilligent trauailer in *the Art of Gardening.*

IT seemeth (louing Reader) not without reason, which *M. Terentius Varro* writeth, that the ancient Philosophers named the Earth, the mother of all plants and crescent things, and the manuring and dressing of it, to be an exercise both vertuous and profitable, which the antient *Romans* & diligent Husbandmen did well obserue, in that they from time to time did so painfully labor, & dilligently seek out the vnderstanding & knowledge, not only of euery kind of earth, but to dig, dung, orderly dresse, & cast into square and euen beds euery ground: and after the same, they dilligently learned the apt times which were most conuenient to sowe or plant in, according to the increase & decrease of the Moone, with the aspects of ỹ Moone vnto such planets, as most aptly serue vnto the same. When the seedes were thus ordetly sowen, and somwhat come vp, then they throughly learned that the often weeding and watring of the yong plantes, did cause them the faster to come vp. And in such places where the plants grow thick together, they by their painfull industry learned to set them thinner: to the end they might the better increase & waxe bigger: and besides these, they carefully laboured, & diligently sought out all such meanes, that might happely expell and destroy the most kinde of venemous and harmfull beastes, wormes, flyes and such like, that commonly annoy & eate vp the seedes & yong plants comming vp: And as their diligēce, great care, & painfull trauels bestowed in the Art of Gardning, deserued of all men worthy cōmendation, so I vpon this occasion, think it not much digressing from the purpose to set forth this treatise of mine, now the fift time increased, to which I haue added such profitable and pleasant matter, as I found written either in the *Italian* or *Latine* tung, that intreated of this Art: whose names (or the most of them) do before appeare, digested into the forme of a Table. And besides these, I haue adioyned sundrie pleasant secrets, and the necessarie commodities also, which most of the hearbs serue vnto in the vse of phisick:

which

which now I haue performed in ſuch ſort, as the like hither-
to hath not been publiſhed in the Engliſh tung. And for re-
compence of my induſtrie, I craue no other of thee (gentle
Reader) but frendly reporting of this Treatiſe. Which if I
finde, it ſhal encourage me to publiſh the other part, aptly to
this belonging: which onely teacheth the perfect order of
planting & graffing of the moſt trees in vſe with vs, with the
proper ſeecrets taught in the ordering of them right profita-
ble to be vnderſtood. But in the meane time look for a pro-
per Treatiſe ioyned to this of Gardening, named The Hus-
bandmans coniectures, vttering the right profitable notes,
not onely of the cõdition of the yere, but other husbãdly in-
ſtructions, ſeruing neceſſarily to the vſe and defence of cat-
tel, with the ſpecial gouernemẽt to be followed each month
throughout the yere, for the preſeruation of health: and di-
uers other inſtructions right profitable to bee vnderſtood.
Vnto which beſides, is ānexed a right pleaſant & profitable
Treatiſe of the meruailous gouernment, order, and vſage of
the Bees, with the great commoditie both of their honnie &
waxe, with their vſe and rare ſecrets aſwell in Phiſick as Sur-
gerie. And this haue I rather ioyned to my Booke of Gar-
dening, for that the honny Bees (after the minde of the an-
cient Gardners) be ſo profitable in a Garden. Alſo looke for
a Treatiſe of mine, being in readines with the Printer, & in-
tituled, Certain pleaſant problemes with other apt anſwers,
teaching frutefull leſſons for the preſeruatiõ of health, with
other philoſophicall demaunds, and their learned anſwers,
vttering ſuch vnknowen matter, as hetherto hath not been
publiſhed in the Engliſh toung, gathered firſt by a learned
Cardinall and philoſopher, named *Fernandus Porzentus*, out
of the *Arabians*, *Greekes*, and ancient Phiſitions in the *Latine*
tung, & now Engliſhed by me for the commodity of many.
Alſo ſundry other Treatiſes be in a like readines with other
Printers, whoſe names and titles I haue heere omitted,
or rather ouerpaſſed for tedioufnes of the Reader. Thus lea-
uing (gentle Reader) to trouble you further, I commit you
to God, wiſhing onely your gentle fauor to further theſe my
rude attempts. *Et feliciter Vale.*

A friend to the Reader.

BY tract of time things most obscure are manifested p laine:
In time the drie and hardest flint is pearst with drop of raine
By time we ioy, time leades our life, by time we doe possesse,
In time we haue that we desire, each thing both more and lesse.
Sith time of right deserues to haue more praise thā tung can tel
In time let Hvil receiue reward, that hath begun so well.
Experience placde in wit profound, in time hath made to yeeld,
To him that whilome captiue was, a conquest in the feeld.
With painfull pen the Writer hath exprest in Englisb plaine
The needfull aid & mightie force, that doth in hearbs remaine.
The time to plant, the time to set, the time to raise againe,
This man by treble diligence, hath brought to light with paine.
Of things that were so high of price, this Author by his skill (fil
Hath brought such plentie, that each wight may haue thereof his
For which this Author askes no good, nor gaine of glee,
He couets no vaine glorious praise, as you may easily see.
His quaking quill hath forced more, a good report to haue,
A light reward, a small returne, this Author seemes to craue.
Wherefore young man or aged syre, else whoso ere thou be,
That by misuenture or by will shalt chance this Booke to see:
Let cankred (enuie meete for hell), abandon euerie sense:
And rather grant to saue than spill, to help than worke offence
Yeeld thou due praise to him that meant not to offend,
So shalt thou see and well perceiue, whereto his worke doth tend.
So shalt thou know the good frō il, the right from wrong discern
So shall thy verdict framed force the Writer more to learne.

FINIS.

THE
Art of Gardening:
Shewing the skilful ordering & care to be bestowed on Gardens, with necessary *helpes, defences, and secrets.*

What three points are to be learned of euerie Gardner, minding to haue a fruitfull Garden: the health that may be recouered by walking in the same, and the comoditie of Gardens placed neere the Cittie. Chap. 1

SEeing a fruitfull and pleasant Garden, cannot be had without the good skill and diligent minde of the Gardner or master of the ground, neither can any profit arise by Gardning, without cost and charges therein bestowed: neither perfectly can it be attained vnto without Art, instructing the due seasons of the yeare: It is therefore meete that these thinges be first cared for, prouided and knowne: which being done, the Garden is made perfect, delectable, and profitable, and wee then receiue by it two speciall commodities.

What manner of maister or Gardiner a fruitefull Garden requireth.

The first is profit, which riseth through the encrease of Hearbs and flowers: the other is pleasure, verie delectable through the delight of walking in the same, which both giueth health to mans body, and recouerie of strength after long sickenes, by commoditie of taking the fresh ayre, and sweet smel of the flowers in the same. And of these two, Varro and Palladius, willeth ỹ Gardens be placst neere to a Citie, both for the commoditie of those Hearbes and Rootes seruing to Phisicke, as all other Hearbs and Flowers, which be profitable for the citie, seeing that gardens placed far from the city, do rather

Vtilitie & pleasure ensueth of well dressed Gardens.

why Gardens ought to be neare hand.

ther hinder the apte bringing of all kinds of Hearbes and flowers vnto the market to be solde. And for this doth Cato commend greatly, that ground or farme place which is situated neere vnto a citie: In which ground, also be set little trees and plantes to beare vp vines, and that Willowes and Osiers be set in watery and wet places neere to riuers, and that the ground besides hath moyst and watery places or springes in it: whereas he Orchards also in most fruitfull and open places and that are well dunged, in the which all kindes of fruit may be set and planted. Place neare to the Citie (saith Cato) many and sundry kindes of Gardens, set and decked with all kindes of pleasant flowers, all rootes that be round, the sweet Myrtle tree, and many other necessarie thinges of like sort to be set and sowen. And a Garden (especially for pot-hearbes) must be moyst of it selfe, or else easie to be watered for fertilitie sake.

Of the standing of Gardens, the water necessarie to them, and of the properties of the ground, with the qualitie and temperatenes of the Aire, and condicion besides of the windes. Chap. 2

where the best & lawdablest placing of a Garden is.

AND now to the scituation and standing of a Garden. The most commodities and profitablest placing of a Garden, is (as Paladius writeth) that the same be neere to a plaine field, somewhat lying allope, & hauing through it small courses of water running as by certaine distances one from the other through the Garden. But yet beware that these be not ouer great courses, for that the easie and small courses be more commodious. And this diligently wey, that better is a little ground of field, being well dressed and laboured, then a large ground hauing no painfull labour bestowed on it at all.

What commoditie it is to haue a well in a Garden.

And further vnderstand, that to haue a wel in a Garden, is right necessarie, except the same may otherwise be watered with some Conduite, or small streame running by, or else be very neare vnto a running water, for water is a great nourisher to hearbes: But if there be no wel nor sweet water running by, then must you dig a pit (although ȳ same wil be very labourous)

labourous) to draw water thereout, in that a Garden of ne-
ceſſitie ought to be often watered, through which (as Plinie
writes) it cauſeth the ſeeds ſowen, the ſoner to ſpring vp, ſpred
abroad, and to be the more plentifull. And therfore if you be
minded to haue a wel or pit that ſhould continue with wa-
ter, then (as Collumella teacheth) you muſt cauſe the ſame to
be digged, when the Sun is in the laſt part of Virgo, which
is in the moneth of September, before the Equinoctial harueſt
or entring of the Sun into Libra: For at that ſeaſon do men
eſpecially trie and finde out, what force and vertue the wels
then haue: at what time the ground through the long drought
of the ſommer, is then depriued both of moyſture and rayne.
But if you cannot well dig a pit, then make a little Pond or
Ceſterne (as Paladius teacheth) in the ground, whereby the
raine falling all the winter, may run thereinto, and by that
meanes you may well water your Garden in the hot ſommer.
And if now you lacke all theſe meanes before taught, for the
watering of your Garden, then ſhall you dig and make the
beds of the Garden in moſt dry places, three or foure fote deep-
per and lower, that the banks about thereof being hard made
together, may ſo keep in the water, which ordred on this wiſe
doeth well defend the drines thereof, for that in time of the
great drought, it is by that meanes watred, and the young &
ſmal plants be therby the better procured to ſpring ſafter vp.

A ſecret to cauſe water to continue long either in pit or wel.

But if the Garden be ouercloyed with water, then dig (af-
ter thy diſcretion) deep gutters here and there in the Garden,
whereby the water falling into them, may be ſo led into ſome
deepe pit in the end of the Garden, made only for that purpoſe,
and conſider that in the ground and Farme places bordering
neare vnto the Citie, the Gardens and Orchards ſhould and
ought to be neareſt the houſe, and both well digged & turned
in with dung, through the which fatning, they may aptlyer
ſpring & plentifullier grow. And beware you make not your
Garden neare to any barne, ſtable or hay loft, ſo nigh as you
can, leaſt the chaffe & duſt both of the Corne and hay blowen a-
brode by the winde, fal vpō the herbs, & ſo by cleuing on, peirce
through the leaues, which ſo peirced, do by and by after burne

them, as writeth Florentinus in his instruction of husbandry. And besides, the hard clinging and gathering together of such strawes, and dust of hay blowen abroad by the winde in the garden, doth so cause a great annoyance, both to the hearbs & plants growing therein. And further take heed, that the aire about the garden be not euill, and infected with the vapors of ditches and stincking puddles, standing neere vnto it, for that these doe not onely infect and corrupt the plants, but dull mens spirrits by walking therein. And in consideration heereof, you shall vnderstand, that euery aire, which is some colde after the Sun be set, and soone hot after the Sun be risen, is both subtile and wholsome: But that aire which is contrary to this, worketh the contrary. And besides, the aire most to be restrayned, is that, which wringeth and bindeth hard the hart and doth make straight the attraction of aire.

What annoyance the Vapours of stinking ditches doth cause.

And as concerning the temperatnes of the aire, and wholsomenes of the place, a garden in colde countries and places, ought to haue the free sky or firmament open toward the east or towards the south part, especially if the same be in such a garden or orchard, that hath young plants or trees set in it: taking heed, least that by any great high hill standing betweene it & those parts of Heauen, it be so excluded from the comfort and aide of these two parts, and so either through the North, where (to vs) the Sun is farthest off, or the late Sun shining of the west, where the sun onely shineth at his going downe, the plants, seeds and sets, be so nipped and destroied with the colde, so long tarying them.

How a garden in cold countries ought to lie.

But if thou canst (saith Cato) let thy garden be at the foote of an hill, and that it beholdeth or lieth open to the south part in some wholsome place, and that the hill defendeth the sharpe colde of the North-side, that might otherwise nip and harme the plants and sets comming vp.

How in hot countries a garden ought most aptly to stand.

But in hot countries, let the faces of gardens be looking or lying open to the north part, which not only is more profitable, but also pleasanter and commodiouser to health. And a marrishe ground is euermore to be refused, how soeuer the same be, especially if it lye open toward the South or West part,

part, and that customably in the sommer, the same be throughlie dried vppe, which so engendereth the Pestilence, and diuers noysome and hurtfull diseases, that greatly harme gardens.

And consider also the nature of the Mote standing about, or the water running by your garden, whether the same sendeth or vapoureth forth (for the most part) euery noysome or stinking aire, which might so annoy you, or the sets, hearbs, and plants, for such is the property of many little riuers: and therefore where any such like is, drawe or plant no garden nere vnto the same. The qualitie of Motes about gardens are to be considered.

And last, the windes are to be considered, for that the south windes be hot and moyst, & the north windes colde and drie, and the east windes be betweene hotnesse and coldnes temperate, yet drier then the west windes: and the East winds generally be alwayes hotter then the West, and yet the West windes be somewhat moister then the East. The quality of the foure windes.

Of the consideration and chosing out of good & excellent ground, and the knowledge of euery earth. Chap. 3.

AND there is much to be considered besides those thinges which we haue hitherto spoken of in the nature and goodnes of a ground: if so be you desire to knowe a fruitful, profitable and battle ground: For euery ground doth not indelie bring vp Garden hearbes. And therefore after the minde of the ancient Husband-men, you shall consider in this manner, by taking a clod of the same earth in your hand, and marking whether the same be white and bare, or leane with sand without any micture of earth: either all chalke, or naughtie and filthy sand or grauell, or drie barren great grauell, or stonie barren and glittering dust, or if it be saltie or bitter, or continually wet and moist. For all those be right noyous and great defaults and incommodities, contrary to a fruitfull ground. The nature and goodnes of euery ground ought to be knowne

And you shall also trie a rotten clod, if the same be almost blacke, and able enough to couer it selfe with his owne grasse,

The triall of garden ground

and of sundry colours: which if it be thin or mouldrie, must be fattned and brought togither by fat earth mixed therewith. But now you shall knowe a fat ground, if you take a small clod, and sprinkle the same with sweet water, and so knead it: which, if the same be clammy, and sticke to your fingers, then may ye be out of doubt, that it is fat earth. Also dig a furrowe and fill the same againe with earth, which if the earth dooth after gape or open, then it is a slender and leane ground, but if it reacheth out, then it is a fat ground. And that also is a meane ground, which doth gape but little, and this ground also must be sweete, which you shall easily trie out by taste thereof, if that out of a part of the ground, which most you mislike, you take a clod, putting the same into an earthen pan, and moistning it with fresh and sweete water, into which dip your finger, and so taste on your tongue how it relisheth and sauoureth, for by that shall you knowe the sweetnesse of the same.

How you may know a good ground.

The triall of sweet earth fit for gardens.

And that ground also is thought to be the best for Gardens, which in the sommer is nether drie, nor clayie, nor sandie, nor rough, nor through the heat of Sommer full of chaps. For that the ground which is so drie in the sommer, doth perish all such seeds or plants sowen or set therein, or else maketh them shoote vp very small and slender: & the clayie ground bindeth to hard through the heat of the Sunne, and the sandy and rough ground worke contrarie to the other, in that they neither nouri she the young plants, nor keepe the water any time falling on them. And to be short, you must euermore choose a fat and loose ground, which needeth but small labour, and yeldeth also plentifullest and greatest fruite. But that ground is most to be refused, which is drie and thick, and both leane and colde. And among all kinde of grounds, the chalkie and red ground are moste to be refused. And of this, Varro doth commend that ground, which of it selfe being gentle and pliable, bringeth forth Walwoths, otherwise named Danwoths. And that ground also doth Collumella commend, which naturally bringeth forth of his owne accord both elmes and wilde young springes, and those trees whether they be

What earth is meetest for Gardens.

A fat and loose ground is best commended for Gardens.

The triall of a fruitfull ground.

Slowe

Slowe trees or Bullasse trées, and wilding or Crab-trees. And on such wise is a fruitfull ground tried out and knowen by such thinges which the same bringeth forth by the onely dowing of Nature. And yet euery ground at times conuenient, may by the dunging, be made more fruitfull and plentifuller, or bigger yéelding.

Any ground by dunging may be made fruitfull.

How a Garden may diuers waies be fenced and inclosed: the maner and secret in making a liuely and strong hedge Chap. 3

WHen you haue thus chosen an apt and fit Plotte of ground to dig a Garden in, then must you in handsome maner, (casting the vtter compasse of it as either foure square, round, or otherwise) enclose the same round about, and beset and fence it throughout, before you goe about to digge it vp, or sowe any thing in the same. For that Gardens being not well fenced and closed about before the sowing and setting of any thing in the same, be many wayes indamaged as well by beastes, as by theeues breaking into them.

And there be many and sundry sorts of fencing and closing in of gardens, as after shall appeare. As first Varro nameth or counteth that a naturall inclosure which is set about with yong trees or thornes, hauing in it the roots of a quick hedge, which we call a quickset hedge, so the same shall not be in danger of the wanton waifairing mans breth, and passing by, although he should put fier to it, and that is named a wilde and rude inclosure, which either is made of rude and shrubbed wood, or of willow, or bushes hauing no life, which we name a dead hedge. And in olde time the Romans vsed to inclose and fence their gardens with stakes and laths, set very thicke in order, and with small rods watled in together, or else by boaring large holes through great stocks of trees, through which railes or great poles might run two together, or three together: and so then raise and fasten a boord along, or stockes of trees, or such like thinges: which manner we now name Paling, when the same is done with Boarde.

And

And that fenſing, of the ancient Authors is named a warlike incloſure, which is framed like to that which the Souldiers make as a defence about their Tents, and ſuch a one ought to bee made neere common high waies, or by Riuers, that the Garden might not be indamaged by beaſts, theeues, nor land floods. And for this cauſe the ancient men framed theſe on this wiſe: as firſt a conuenient and apt ditch or trench was caſt vp and made about the garden or field, that it might ſo receiue all the raine water falling thereabout: and it had alſo a ridge or ſlope paſſage in it, that the water might the freelyer paſſe from the bottome. And there was beſides, an high heape of earth on the in-ſide next adioyning to the ditch brinke, ſo drie and hard, that a man could not eaſily climbe or paſſe ouer it.

Alſo there were certain which made ſuch ſteepe ſteps without any ditch, which they named walles, And they of old time alſo named that a builded incloſure, which was made of drie ſtones, or ſlate laide one vpon another, & that in diuers formes: For either the ſame was made with clay & ſtones, workmanly and finely built (in thoſe places eſpecially) by which quarries of ſtone were neere vnto, or of ſuch as were of abilitie to get ſtone otherwiſe. And either they made their incloſures of baked or vnbaked bricke, or with earth & ſtones mortered together, and framed like to the walles of an houſe.

The profit & cõmoditie of a quickſet & ſtrong hedge

But the profitableſt hedge of all (eſpecially in the fieldes) and leaſt of coſt, is that which is made with Byars, & thornes mixed or ſet together: for this hedge and incloſure will induce an infinite time. And therefore this hedge of the ancient husbandmen was moſt commended, For that the ſame was well knowne to them, that the Briar would not lightly periſh and decay, vnleſſe the ſame had beene plucked vp by the rootes: And after the iniurie alſo of the fire, it both renueth and ſpringeth the better.

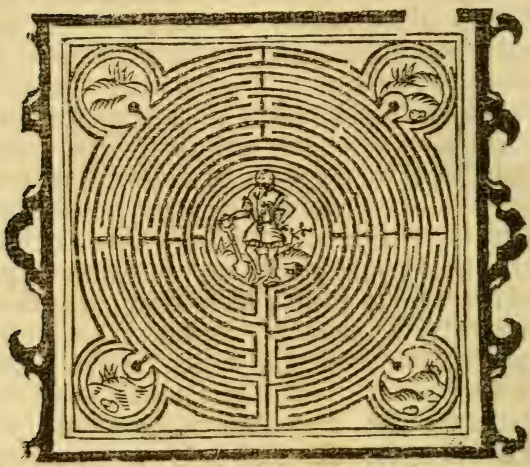
The making of a quickſet hedge.

The place that you determine to encloſe, muſt after the begining of September, when the ground hath beene well ſoked with raine, be trenched about with two furrowes, a yard diſtant one from ỹ other: the deapth and breadth of euerie one of them muſt bee two foote, which you muſt ſuffer to lie

lie emptie all winter, prouiding in the meane time the seedes that you meane to sowe in them, which must be the berries of sharp thornes, briers, hollye, wilde Eglantine, which the Greekes cal Kunosbaton, dog brier. The berries of these you must gather as ripe as you may, and mingle them with the flower or meale of tares, which when it is sprinckled with water, must be put vppon olde ropes of shippes, or any other ropes: the ropes being thus handled and dryed must be layed vp in some boorded floore. And in the place round about where the hedge shall run, they will, two furlong to be eared and digged, three foote asunder, and a foot and a halfe deepe: this they will to be done in the end of the Equinoctiall of the harueste, when as the ground is well moysture with showers. Collumella willeth after the Ides of February.

And they will also that those furrowes soe lye all the winter opened and vncouered, in preparing the seedes in a readines to sowe against the time. And after that, in the end of Februarie, they will to lay the saide ropes at length in the furrowes, and couer them (so lying) with thin and light earth, and to water the seedes againe, if neede of the season shall so require: which they will so to be ordered, in that these seedes of the thornes, cannot otherwise shoote vp and grow, if they were ouermuch couered with earth: as this day they will not to be done when the winde bloweth out of the Southwest. So within xxi dayes after doe the thornes shote vp, which by prettie helpes and short props ought to be directed, that shooting vp further, they may so supply the voyd spaces. Another way is this: First they plant young elder trees, three foote asunder, and they take the brambles & wilde briar, & put them in long lumps of claye or earth, & set them here and there betweene the elder trees, couering them orderly with earth, and in the comming vp of the young plantes, they dig about and water them, if neede so require: & within 3. yeares after, the hedge will keepe out both theefe and beast. But after the three yeares growth, the ancient husbandmen will that this hedge should be burnt euery yeare once, for that by the burning they shoote out & ware stiffer, harder and sharper. And to conclude, this is an vniuersall way, & the surest maner to enclose all gardens. A witty secret in the fencing of a garden. Another way of making a quicke-set hedge.

Of the first Maze. Chap. 5.



HEre by the way (gentle Reader) I doe place two proper Mazes, the one before this chapter, and the other after, as proper adornements vppon pleasure to a Garden, that who so liketh, hauing such roome in their Garden, may place the one of them, which liketh them best, in that void place of the Garden that may best be spared for the onely purpose to sport them in at times: which Mazes being workemanlike handled by the Gardiner, shall much beautifie them, in diuiding foure sundry fruits to be placed in each of the corners of the Maze, and in the middle of it, a proper herber decked with Roses, or else some tree of Rosemarie, or other fruite at the discretion of the Gardiner.

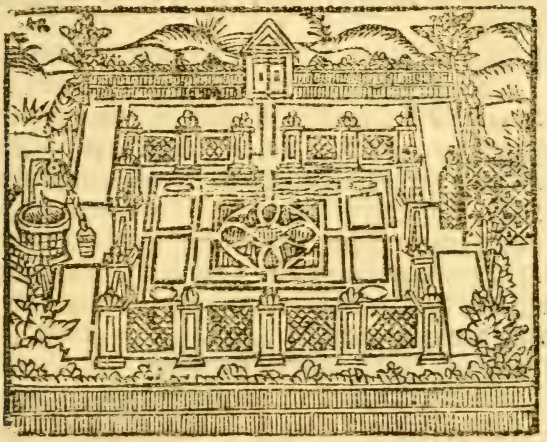
Of the dung and dunging of Gardens, with the digging, dressing, leuelling and disposing of the quarters and beds. Chap. 6.

The apt times of digging and dressing the ground for euerie season.

FOr so much as in the Haruest and Spring time, be many sowings sowen in the Garden, therefore it behoueth to dig vp, dung, & labor that part of the ground in the spring time, which you intend to sowe in Haruest, that the same may so serue

ſerue all the winter through. And thoſe parts of the Garden which you intend to ſowe in the ſpring time, that they may bring forth their fruite in the Summer, thoſe parts apply and turne vp toward the North. And this ſhall you ſo digge and dreſſe, when as the earth ſhall not be ouer moyſt nor drie.

And that ground alſo which you will haue in a readines to ſowe in the Harueſt, muſt be turned vp in the moneth of May, whereby the heate of the Sunne and all the Summer through may ſo breake and looſe the clods, or burne or wyther the rootes of the hearbes left in the earth.



And after that the quarters and beds of the Garden, be thus finely ordered and turned in with dung, and ſowen alſo for the winter, then in the cold winter ſeaſon, before the yong plants be come vp, they muſt be defended and nourished with dung (as by ſprinckling it on the beds) that it may the better defend the yong plants from the ſuperfluous colde and corrupting in the deepe of winter. But the grounds which you will ſowe in the ſpring, muſt be digged about the Calends of Nouember, & you ſhall ſo let it lie digged vp after the Harueſt, to be burnt and conſumed by the cold and ſharpe hoarie frоſts.

What ought to be done after the quarters of the Garden be thus ordred and ſowen for the winter.

For like as in the Summer the heat of the Sun doth ſcathe & parch the ground, euen ſo doth the bitternes of the cold vnloſe

Note that good dung maketh a good ground the better, and greatly amendeth an ill earth.

the same into small partes.

And after the winter is ended, then must that part of the garden be dunged, So that when the time of sowing is nere at hand, then that place of the Garden fiue dayes before shall be weeded, stoned, and dunged againe, and after that digged again, and with the diligent and often digging, so turned vp, that the earth and dung be well mixed togither, and not to lye altogether at the rootes of the plantes, but that first the earth be thin cast, and after the dung, and then the earth a-gaine to couer the same. For by that meanes shall neither the young plants be burned, nor the heate of the dung hastily breath forth.

How dung ought to be ordred:

The worthynes of dungs:

Asses best commended.

And the best and worthiest for this purpose, is Asses dung, because it bringeth vp least weedes: and the next to this is dung of Kine, Oxen, Horses, Sheepe, and Goates, so that it be not aboue a yeare olde, hard, and drie, the which also hath his full strength, and bringeth vp least weedes: for if the dung shall be older, it profiteth nothing, for that is of lesse strength: and yet in Gardens the new dung being three dayes old, shall well suffise and serue the turne. But that which men make, although it be thought most excellent, yet it is not so needfull to be desired, vnles that either the ground be barren, grauelly or a most loose sand, hauing no strength or force in it, which so being, needeth the greater helpe of nourishment in the dunging. And the Swines dung is thought very ill, for that the same is hot. Also the Pigeons and Doues dung is most hot. And yet ashes (to dung with) is thought very good: and especially for pot-hearbes, being finely sifted: the which for his naturall heat doth not onely refresh the earth, but slayeth and driueth away all flyes, and all kinde of wormes, snailes, and such like beastes that annoy the hearbes.

Next Kine, Oxen, sheep, horse, goates:

New dung is vnprofitable for Gardens.

Swines, Pigeons, & Doues dung best for pot-hearbs.

And the like in a maner doth the pigeons dung, so that the same be scattered like seeds on the ground, whereby to season ground the better: and not on heapes, like the laying of the oxe or horse dung.

And this also conceiue, that a watry Garden ground needeth more dunging, & a dry ground the lesser dunging: and be-

sides

sides these, you may dung your grauelly ground with chalke, if so be you can get no cattels dung, and the chalkie or ouer thicke ground, you may dung with grauell, for the lacke of other dung. And by that meanes, such garden grounds be not onely made battle and good of yeeld, but become also beautifull, as writeth Collumella. What to be done in the lack of dung.

And Plinie writeth, that when you dung your garden, let the winde then blowe out of the West, and the Moone decreasing of light, and drie that season so nigh as you can. For by that meanes doth the ground yeeld the plentifuller. What to be obserued in dunging the Gardens.

And now after the new digging and turning vp againe, about the middle of Januarie, the Garden must then be garnished with hearbes, before the quarters and beds be cast out and deuised. And you may make the herbers either straight running vp, or else vaulted or close ouer the head, like to the vine herbers now adaies made.

And if they be made with Juniper wood, you neede to repaire nothing thereof ten yeares after: but if they be made with willow poles, then must you new repaire them euery 3. yeare after: And he which will set Roses to run along about his herber, or beds round about his herber, must set them in Februarie. Iuniper poles best commended for the building of herbers.

And the beds of Roses be commonly set in a mosse short furrowe, or be placed by alleys round about the garden, whether ye set them in slips, or sowe them in seedes. And Palladius writeth, that we may not thinke those to be the seedes of the Rose, which growe in the middle of the flower, in colour like to the golde: but that the seedes be in that which is like to a small peare in the vpper end of the stalke. How Roses ought to be set. Which be the seedes in the Rose.

And the seedes be then ripe to be gathered, when the grapes be full ripe, which ripenesse of them by their Fuskish and browne colour, and by their softnes may be knowen. And in the like manner you may doe, if you will sowe that sweet tree or flowre named Iacemine, Rosemary, or the Pomegranate seedes, vnles you had rather decke your herbers comelier with vines.

And when the herbers be set & made about the walke of the

Walkes & allies be necessarie in a garden.

Garden, then the ground new digged, must be deuised into borders and beds, leauing apart that roome and space, which you will bestowe vpon walkes and bowling allies, the which allies and walkes you shall sift ouer with the finest sand, least by raine and showers, the earth should cleaue and clagge on your feete: and this done, you shall leuell your beds & borders of a height and breadth by a line layd out, whereby to weede the hearbes.

Why beddes ought to be leuelled euen of a breadth.

And for this cause the same ought to be made, least that in weeding the hearbs, they tread them & the yong seeds downe, And therefore let the weeders goe by the paths and alleys, weeding the one halfe first, and the other after. And the beds saith Palladius, must be made long and narrowe, that is xii. foot in length, and six in breadth, and spaces betweene the larger, whereby the beds may the better be weeded cleane on each side.

What length & bredth Palladius willeth the beds to be

And let the borders or edges of beddes be raised two foote high in moist or watry places: but in drie places, it shall be sufficient to raise them one foote high.

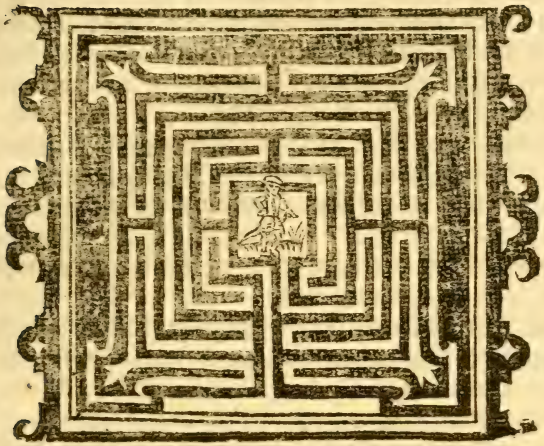
How the waters lying in the allies may be led from place to place.

There must be made also certaine little allies or gutters, by which the moisture in watry places may so run forth.

And those allies besides must be deeper then the beds, that the water gently poured foorth, by a watring pot, from the vpper part, may the lightlier soake into the gutters or allies.

And where the beds be well watered, and that water standeth in the allies by, then may you from thence leade the water into some other necessarie place, which needeth watring.

Of the second Maze. Chap. 7



AND heere also I place the other Maze, which may be like ordered and vsed, as I spake before, and it may either be sette with Isope and Time, or with winter Sauery and Time: for thee doe well endure all the Winter thorowe greene. And there be some which set their Mazes with Lauender Cotten, Spike, Marioram and such like. But let them be ordered in this point as liketh best the Gardner, and so an end. For I do not heere set forth this, or the other Maze before expressed, for any necessarie commoditie in a garden but rather appoint either of these (which liketh you best) as a beautifying vnto your garden: for that mazes and knots aptly made, doe much set forth a garden, which neuertheless I referre to your discretion, for that all persons be not of like abilitie.

Certaine precepts & rules of ancient men, both in the choise and proper sowing of seedes. Chap. 8.

THE Garden, as Palladius writeth, which lyeth vnder a gentle & wholsome aire, and hath a Fountaine, Spring,

or

or sweete water running by it, is in a manner good enough of itselfe, and needeth lesse instructions for the sowing thereof.

The temperatenes of time necessarie to sowing.

The seedes sowen in due chosen time, as concerning the weather and the Moone, doe the sooner come vp: but sowen in warme and sunnye places, or well lying in the Sunne, doth speedilliest breake forth and shoote vp.

In cold seasons sowe not.

And beware of sowing any seedes, the winde then blowing out of the north, or in very colde dayes, for that in those dayes the seeds be much hindred through the colde: and therefore for the sowing of your seedes choose warme and temperate dayes, for the better comforting and spreading forward of your seedes lying on the earth.

A defence for the seedes sowne.

And if after the seedes sowen, you doubt either the coldnes or hotnes of the season, in the schorching or burning of your seedes, then couer your beddes with the chaffe of corne, and with sticks a crosse ouer the same, and small reedes or twigs also laide aptly vppon them, for the better defence, as Columella writeth.

When plants are to be remooued.

And all hearbes in a manner may well be remooued, when they shallbe somewhat growen and come vp, and the earth(at the remooving shall not be ouer drye. The newer seedes that do soonest spring vp be these: the Leeke, Siue, Cucumber and the Gourde.

The varietie in comming vp of newe and old seedes.

And the olde seedes that do speedilier spring vp be these: the Parcely, Beetes, Tresses, Sauery, Marioram, Pennyroyall, and Coliander: And the seedes sowen in hot places do speedilyer shoote vp in the stalkes, and sooner yeelde forth seede.

And the seedes that soonest breake and come vp, be Basill, Spinage, Mauewe, which is a kinde of Rapes, and Rocket: for all these at the third dayes sowing, appeare aboue the ground, & yet the slowest of all seedes commeth vp is Parcely.

A secret to make Leekes & onions begin the head.

And to put many seedes into one hole in the ground, shall all gather into one substance, and bring forth the greater frute: Like as you shall put many heads of Leekes or Onions into one hole together, and treading the blades often downe in the growing and shooting vp.

And

And that the Lettice, Parcely, Rocket & Basill, may grow altogither out of one stem or stalke, take 2 or 3 small balles of the Goat or sheepes dung, and those breake, and mingle the seedes togither in them, & after role altogither into a round ball, which after set into new Cow-dung, and couering the same with well drest and fine earth, that gently water. Rare secrets in causing sundry plants to grow out of one stalke.

And some do take two or three of the sheepe or goats dung, and breaking them, do so mingle the seedes and dung togither, which they after lap in a linnen cloth, and order the same in the ground as afore is taught. A secret not vnlike to the former.

And that many sauours & tastes may be felt in one heath, take first of the Lettice two or three seedes, of the Endiue so many, of the Smallage the like: of the Basill, the Leeke and of the parsley (of all these three) so manye seeds as of the other: then put all the seedes into a hole together, and in such sorte that the seeds may touch one another: but this before remembred, that you put them together in the dung of a horse or Oxe without any earth mingled with them. And thus sowen, there will after spring vp a plant, hauing so many sauours or tastes, as there were sowen together. A maruelous secret in causing many sauours to be felt in one hearbe.

Of the times in sowing and proper ordering of seeds, with the watring & weeding of the yong plants in the comming vp: the diuers maners of remouing and setting againe of the hearbes being somewhat growne vp.

Chap. 9

ALthough the ancient husbandmen appoint certaine prescript times, as by months and daies, yet the same ought to be considered according to the nature of the place and condition of the ayre, so that you wey this with your selfe which wee shall after teach, that there bee certaine seedes which doe more speedilier spring vp, and certaine other seedes which are more later comming vp. The nature of the ground & qualitie of the aire are to be considered in the sowing of seedes.

And as touching the Garden hearbes, they (after their sowing) require no other diligence and care, but onely raking, weeding and watring. For that by due raking, both the stones are boided away from the new springing seedes, and all the What is required after the sowing of garden seeds

noyous weedes that hinder the hearbs comming vp, are then better worne away.

What kinde of weeding hearbes is best commended.

And yet the cleaner weeding and pluckíng vp of all rootes must be done with the hand: which differeth from the killing of weedes by raking. And of these also which most harme the beddes newe sowen, is, to walke much by them, or to moue the Earth, when the same shall be very loose: for thereby it setleth fast the ground, that it maketh weedes the harder to be plucked vp, after the falling of great store of raine.

The seasonable time of watering, and what kinde of water ought to be vsed.

And the watering of your drye beddes which often happeneth for lacke of raine and moysture, about the hot and drye Dogge-dayes, must chiefely be done with luke warme water, and that euerye morning and euening as Plinie writeth, if neede so require, with that water which timely in the morning is drawen out of no deepe Well, and reserued in some wooden vessell for three howres before, or as some do write, that it be set vnder the Skye for two or three dayes togither, that the Sunne may the better worke vppon it.

The manner and forme of watering of Hearbes.

And water not your beddes too much, for that the same harmeth and weakeneth the rootes and plantes: And to this water also mingle a little dung, the which shall giue a better nourishment with the water to the hearbes and young plantes comming vp, if it be leasurely and gentlye watered forth.

And the young tender plantes new sprong vp, neede lesse watring then the stronger growen, which desire a great deale the more watering, yet the same to be leasurely done, that all the rootes may drinke alike of it, and not be hastily drowned with water. But colde, and salte water drawen out of deepe Welles, is most hurtfull vnto all plantes and hearbes, except the same stand for certaine howres in the hot Sunne, and be watered warme on the plantes.

And such seedes as ought onely to be sowen neare the end of Haruest, as in the moneth of September or October, that they may all the winter continue and be soaked in the ground, be these: Garlike, Onyons, Scalions, young Leeke-

heads,

heads, great Garlike and Mustard-seede.

What is to be doone in salt ground.

If of necessitie you must plant or sowe any thing in a salte ground, then that whatsoeuer it be, must be planted in the end of Haruest, or sowed the like, that the euilnes, and corruptnesse of the grounde, may be washed away with the winter showers.

And if you set any young Trees in that grounde, let that there-about, be mixed with a quantitie of sweete Earth and Riuer sand.

the knowledge of seeds meete for sowing.

And your seedes (that you minde to sowe) may not be aboue a yeare olde, and that beuised, be whiter within, and heuier, least being corrupt by oldenes, they cannot encrease and come forward.

The third moneth sowing agreeeth in colde and snowey places, where the qualitie of Sommer is moyst, but seldome in other places the like hap correspondeth.

And seedes three moneths olde, will better agree, if that in hot places they be sowen in the Haruest.

And you may plant and sowe in your ground (if you will) the best kindes of euery fruite, seedes, slipps, or graffes, but set and sowe that (which you knowe by experience) will best prosper and come forward in your ground.

But any newe kinde of seedes, and not tryed before in your ground, you may not put your whole hope that vndoubtedly they will prosper, in that it is doubtfull whether they will prosper or no.

And in moyst places, the seedes do sooner spring vp, then in the drie: and this vnderstand, according to the kinde and proper nature of them. And of this, the choice of ground in the sowing of your seedes much auaileth.

shadowy places hurtful to plants.

And all such settes and seedes doe seldome prosper, which be sowen or sett in shadowey places. And such thinges also as do flower, in the time of their flower bearing, are not to be handled. And all kinde of pulses, as Peason, Fitches, Tares, &c. (as the Greeke authors willeth) must be sowen in drye grounds, except the Beanes, which ought only to be sowen in moyst grounds.

What seedes may be sown at pleasure of the gardener.

And such seedes, which at will and pleasure may be sowen (as both in harueſt and ſpring time) vnto your vſe and commoditie, and that in a warme and comfortable ſeaſon, and fruitfull ground, be theſe: the Lettice, the Coleworztes, the Parſnips, the Carrets, the white Poppy, the Artechokes, and diuers other ſeedes.

A conſideration in the ſowing of ſeeds in hot and colde ground.

And in colde Countries the harueſt ſowing muſt be done earlyer, and the ſpring later. But in hot Countries, the Harueſt ſowing muſt be later, and the ſpring timelyer.

And whatſoeuer you will ſowe, let the ſame be done after the fourth day of the new Moone, and ſo continue vnto the ful of the Moone, but no longer: in that it oftentimes ſo happeneth, that the ſowing of ſeedes in the decreaſe or wane of the Moone, proſpereth not, as witneſſeth Auenezra.

And ſuch things alſo as you will cut down or gather, let the ſame be done in the wane of the Moone But ſuch things as you minde to ſell, let thoſe be gathered in the full Moones, becauſe the greater they do then abide, the vendiblier, or readier they will be to be ſolde.

what ſeaſon beſt commended for the ſowing of ſeedes.

And all ſeedes which be kindly ſowen, be rather ſowen in temperate wether, when as ſome ſhowers of raine moiſtning the ground, fall a day or two before, rather then in a dry ſeaſon and colde aire: For that the ſeedes ſo ſowen, do ſpeedilier ſpring vp through the warmenes and comfort of the ſeaſon, then in a colde aire, which of propertie doth both include them in the earth, and keepeth them long in comming.

And yet it oftentimes ſo happeneth, that although the ſeedes be perfect good, yet they ſpring not after their ſowing, through ſome malice of the celeſtiall bodies. And for that cauſe ſowe ſundry ſeedes togither, for the surer triall and proofe of them.

When plants may beſt be remoued, and of the commodity by remouing them.

And after all theſe, the moſt or greateſt number of plants, may well be remoued, when they be somewhat ſprong vp, ſo that the ground be not ouer drie nor ouer moyſt.

For by remouing, ſuch plants may the better be weeded (being thin ſet) and grow the better vnto their full bignes, and be alſo ſweeter, ſo that they gently looſe and weede away alwayes

wayes all the euil weedes that spring vp amongst them which otherwise would hinder and take away their nourishment.

And those hearbes also which ought not to be remoued, after their yong comming vp, must be thinne sowen, but those which ought to be remoued, must be thicke sowen together. A good instruction of sowing seedes.

Certaine helpes and secrets for the garden seeds, as wel before, as after the sowing of them, that they may not be harmed by any inward or outward meanes. Chap. 10.

AND now in vaine hath the Gardner (or any other) bestowed his paines, in the diligent laboring of his ground, and committing of seeds to the earth: if in like manner he seek not those meanes which may best auoyde the harme of the birds scraping vp the seedes, and the other beastes and wormes creeping in the earth. And to auoyd these harmes and damages, marke diligently these instructions heereafter taught.

And first if your seedes a little before the sowing, be steeped or soaked in the iuice of the hearb named the house Leeke, or for lack of sufficient plentie of the hearbe, to lay the seedes all a day and night in, you may in stead thereof, seeth the hearbe in faire water, and with that water you may sprinckle your seedes sowen in the beds, that they may so draw to them, and drinke in of that iuice, which by that meanes doth only defend, that neither the Birds, Ants, or Pismiers, Field mice, nor any other vermine, will at any time after touche those seeds or young plants after sprung vp, but cause them encrease the better, as writeth the worthy Collumella, who of experience is often noted true. worthy secrets in preseruing the seeds sowen in the earth without harm

And Africanus writeth, that if you seeth a little wheat or barly in wine, or soake it in the wine, with the rote Hellebor, or otherwise Rose wort, and after scatter it in the paths & alleis about the garden, that the same not onely defendth the seeds frō the iniury of birds, but maketh them seeme as dead, or rather as dronken by eating thereof, which being on this wise, he willeth to hang by the legs on a sticke, vnto the fearing of the other birds. A secret that the seedes be not destroyed of Birds.

A marueilous matter of the decoction of Riuer creuiſes

And the ſaide Africanus writeth, that the decoction of the Riuer creuiſes, ſprinckled on the ſeedes, doth both defend the ſeeds, and the young plants ſprung of the ſeedes, that neither the Birds, nor any other creeping thing, will after (a matter greatly to be marueiled at) neuer touch them. And there be ſome, which will, after the young plants be ſomewhat ſprung vp, ſprinckle onely of the water wherein the creuiſes be ſodden, as a ſure defence, which many times hath bene tried and found true by ſundry, if ſo be the ſame be done at a certaine time of the Moone.

A ſecret of the Greeke and latin huſbandmen for preſerning of ſeedes very notable.

And the powder of the Harts horne, either filed or ſhauen, and the ſame infuſed in ſweet water, and the ſeeds before the ſowing ſoaked therein, or ſprinckled with that water after the ſowing, doth well defend the young plants from being gnawne of any creeping thing.

And the ſeeds after the ſowing, ſprinckled with the brine water made of Nitre, doth well defend them from beeing eaten of wormes, ants, and ſuch like, as Virgill in his huſbandry writeth.

And the Greeke Author Apuleus writeth, the onely ſprinkling of wine on the ſeedes and young plants, to be a meanes of the better ſtrength and encreaſe of them.

And certaine Greeke writers of huſbandry allowed of Plinie, Collumella, and Palladius, affirme, that the rootes of the wilde Cowcumber, ſoked in ſweet water for a day and a night, and that water often ſprinckled on the ſeedes, the next day following (thoſe ſeedes couered with a blanket) and after ſowen in the ground, that then they be defended from all noyſome wormes and other creeping thinges.

And the Greeke Author Apuleus writeth, as a ſafegard vnto your ſeedes, that if before the digging and caſting vp of your beds, you draw about the Garden the ſpeckled tode and putting him into an earthen pot, you doe after bury him in the middle of your Garden, or ouer-whelm him with earth in a deepe furrowe, which let there remaine vnto the ſowing time, and after digge him vppe, caſting him a great way of leaſt the plants growing thereabout, might become bitter

Secrets of the ſpeckled tode

and

and vnsauorie. And the Egyptian and Greeke authours of Husbandry write, that the young plants shall not be gnawen or harmed of any creeping thing, if the seeds be sowen about the first quarter of the Moone.

And Democritus writeth, that if you put ten Sea or Riuer Creuises into a vessell full of water, and couering it, you set the same abroad to be summed for ten dayes, & soke your seeds for other eight dayes in that water, which after the minde of Democritus sowe in your beds: and after the young plants of those seedes be springing vp, they will not onely driue cattle and other small beastes from the eating of them. But further of those helpes shall be taughtin that Chapter, where we write of the diuers remedies against sundry beastes, worms, flies, and such like, that commonly annoy gardens.

A phisicke experiment of Democritus that after the plants be come vp, they shall not be harmed of beastes nor of any creeping things.

Certaine speciall times to be noted and obserued, either for their aide & sauour to be chosen: or for their annoyance and incommoditie to be eschewed for sowing, planting, or graffing.

Chap. 11.

THe more of valure our stuffe and labour thereabout is, the more circumspect wee ought to bee, and the more aide thereto we may get, or the greater danger therein wee may auoide, the more carefull euery wise man will be.

And the dayly experience is our schoolemaster to instruct vs how much it preuaileth or hindreth for seedes to be sowen, plants to be set, or yemmes to be graffed in this or that time, hauing respect not onely to the time of the yeare, as the Sun altereth it, but also to the encrease or wane of the Moon, to the signe she is in, and to the places of heauen aboue, or vnder the earth, and also to the aspects of other plants, whose beames of light and influence, both quicken, comfort, preserue, & maintaine, or els nip, dry, wither, consume, and destroy by sun drie waies the tender seeds, plants, and grafts, according to their nature, and force naturall or accidentall.

Herein

Heerein first presupposing the due circumspection of the choice of ground, & other thinges generally required in this. And therfore according both to the authoritie of the wise and expert Astronomers, as also the wary and prudent experimenters, in either sowing or planting, or other like practise about hearbes, plants, or trees, haue left vnto vs for our commoditie these rules following, that are to be vnderstood and kept in causes of importance, and where occasion may be taken.

When Saturne and the Moone are either three-score degrées off the Zodiacke asunder, (which difference is called a sertile aspect, thus commonly marked ✶) or when they are asunder, 126. degrées, which is called a triangle, Trigon, or Trient aspect, then is it good to labour the earth, for either sowing, tilling, garoning, vining, or building.

But when they are a quarter of the Zodiack asunder, called a quartile aspect, which is 90. degrees, then meddle not in such matters, For when they are in places opposite one to another, as if the one be in Aries, and the other in like number of degrées in Libra, and so of Taurus and Scorpio &c.

The full Moons are not good for that purpose, speaking generally as we now doe: the Moone being neere the Dragons taile, is not good, but neere the dragons head is good. All other things be presupposed equall: and most briefly for this little treatise to knit vp other obseruatiõs depending of the moones places only, consider these following.

The Moone being betwéen the 28. degrée of Taurus, and the eleuenth of Gemini, sowe. And the moone being betwéene the 28 of Gemini, and the first of Cancer, sowe not. And from the first of Cancer, vnto the 19. of the same, sowe and plow. And from the 28. of Leo, vnto ♍ 21. of Virgo, sowe and plant. And from thence vnto the 24. of Virgo, build, sowe and plant: and from the 24. of Virgo vnto the 19. of Libra, sowe & plow, and from thence vnto the 19. sowe and plant. And from the 6. of Capricornus, vnto the 19 of Capricornus sowe. And from the 24. of Pisces, vnto the 7. of Aries, sowe. Besides all these, you may by your naturall reason, easily finde this rule of the olde

olde writers to be well noted to vs, that either in a verye moystie ground, or elſe the ſeedes you ſowe, be ſeedes of great moyſture, that then you ſhall commodiouſlye chooſe the end of the Moones wane, when ſhe is very neare her change, but if either your ground be of the drieſt, or your ſeedes: the Moone wexing and toward the full, is fitteſt, as Plinie witneſſeth.

And the more of theſe you can finde at your time of concurring, the better it is: as in good ground well dreſſed, in due ſeaſon of the yeare, in due time of the Moones age, in due time of her place, in the Zodiacke, in due aſpecte of Saturne, well placed in the ſight of Heauen &c. And vnles your ſtuffe be good, all this preuaileth not. And beſides that, the common Almanackes vppon perticuler aſpects incident for the time, doe now and then eracly warne you of times good to plant in, as commonly when the Moone is in Taurus and Aquarius, or to ſowe in, as when ſhe is in Taurus, Cancer, Virgo, Libra and Capricornus, or when any of theſe ſignes are aſcending in the Eaſt angle. And when Mars neither regardeth the aſcendant, or the Moone, but that he be weekely placed in the ſcituation of the heauens for that time.

A great many of other rules as concerning the perticular fauour or hinderance of the heauens, might (and that neceſſarily) haue bene brought in this place, but neither is it in my purpoſe, for this preſent, either to be long in wrighting or darke in ſence.

And perchance, the moſt part of the common ſort of people will thinke thoſe thinges ſomewhat aboue their capacitie, yet my conſcience bound me ſomewhat to put ſuch matter into their heades occaſioning them thereby (where the daintines and valew of the ſeedes or ſets ſo require) to vſe the councell of ſome ſuch as both may expound them theſe rules, and giue them ouer alike if need be.

Euen heere you muſt preſuppoſe all thinges on your part fully and onely firſt prepared and well appointed, and then to waite for, or take heede to ſuch times as heere are noted, for the working of the Plannets therein.

Certaine helps & secrets against haile, lightning, tempests, mistes, rust, frosts and burning heat. Chap. 12.

SEeing the seedes, plants and hearbes sowen and set in the garden, be after in daunger of haile and mistes, and other stormie weather, which greatly discomfits the Gardner, or (at the least) such which hope to haue profit and commoditie by the hearbes sowne and set in the Garden: Therefore for the better auoyding of these dangers, the auncient husbandmen and skillfull Gardners haue found out by practice, sundry remedies against such weather.

And first against haile, the ancient husbandmen counsaile to compas the allyes in the garden, about with the white vine. And Philostratus willeth, that when we see the haile neare at hand, then to compas ỹ allies about with the skinne of the Sea-calfe, or els the beast Hiena or the Crocadile, and to hang any of these skinnes also at the entrance or comming in of the garden.

Helpes and secrets, against haile neere at hand,

And the Greekes write, that the garden shall not be harmed by lightnings, if that the same about be covered with the hide of the riuer Horse, named Hippotamon. And Columella writeth, that if you compas the allyes of your garden about with the white Vine, or hang an Owle in the Garden with the winges abroad, that either of these do defend the garden from lightnings. And sundrie doe plant the Bay tree in diuers places of the garden, as a defence to it against lightnings.

Helps against lightnings.

And Archibius wrote vnto Antiochus King of Siria, and diuers auncient men the like, that if you bury the speckled Toade inclosed in a new earthen pot, in the middle of your Garden, that the same defendeth it from hurtfull weather and tempestes.

Some also hang the Eagles feathers, or the skinne of the Sea-Calfe in the middle of the garden, or in the four corners of the same as a prouided defence to it against tempestes. And if thicke mistes do harme thy garden, then burne heapes of Chaffe, weedes, or hyrnlwes in sundrie places, for that the smoake

Helps against thicke mystes and frostes.

smoake shall much help this matter. And Diophanes in his rules of husbandry, willeth to gather together dead weedes or such like matter, and burne them on heapes in many places about the garden, but especially in that part which way the winde then bloweth, that it may so carrie the smoake through the Garden: for by that meanes, it is thought to annoyde and put away the euill and harme of the myste which is then present, or at hand.

And when ruft is falling on the hearbes, then Beritius in his husbandry instructions, willeth to burne the left horne of an Ore, with Ore dung, and to make a great smoake forthwith round about the garden, but especially that way which the winde then bloweth, whereby all the smoake through the winde, may be so carryed against the violence of the ruft falling, which by that meanes shal beare off the noysome occasion of the aire. Helps against ruft,

And Apuleus writeth, that if you make a smoke with the burning of Creuises & Ore or goats dung, or chaffe, the same to be a most present remedie against the ruft. And certaine Greeks write, that a garden sowne with beanes, both within and without, they do defend it from being harmed by frosts. A secret against frost,

Beritius and Anotalius write, that if you soak the rootes or leaues of either the wilde Cowcumber or Colloquintida brused in water, & sprinkle your hearbes taken with ruft, before the rising of the Sun, that the same recouereth them. Helps against ruft that falls before the sun rising.

And the saide Anotalius writeth, that if you keep your seeds in the water of the rootes of the wilde Cowcumber, before you sowe them, that the same defendeth them from all harmes of the wormes, flies and all other creeping thinges.

And Apuleus writeth, that if you plant the Bay tree in many places of your garden, that the same putteth away the harmes of the ruft, as hath often bene experienced.

And that burning heate harme not your Garden, which commonly commeth about the Canicular or Dogge dayes, Plinie willeth to burne and make a smoak of three Creuises about your ground and vnder your Vine, as a good remedie against the same. A secret against burning heate

Certaine helpes and secrets against the Garden wormes, the greene Flyes, the Canker woormes, the great Moths, the Snailes with shelles and without shelles that harme and gnawe as well the leaues of Trees & Fruits, as the hearbs and young Plants comming vp. Chap. 13.

Garden grounds harmed by diuers iniuries.

AND forasmuch as it is apparant vnto all mens eyes, that the hearbes and young plantes after they bee come vp, be diuerslie in daunger to certaine small Beastes and creeping thinges, liuing aswell vnder the earth as aboue, that cause the plants oftentimes to become weake, if they bee not speedily looked vnto for remedie. And such also is that great encrease and aboundance of them, that by all meanes possible that can bee deuised either with fire, smoake or Iron, they may not after be vtterly expelled and driuen out of the Garden, being there once lodged in the ground: Wherfore that these annoiances to the Garden, may by diligent industrie of the Gardner be the better destroyed, and that hee may receiue the more commoditie and profit by his Hearbes, flowers and rootes, therefore shall heere bee declared, such speciall remedies as the ancient and late writers haue inuented, and by their diligence practised, vnto the great comfort of the Gardner, and to him that hath delight in a Garden.

A hard expelling sometime of creeping thinges out of Gardens.

Remedies against the garden wormes.

And first Africanus, in his learned worke of husbandrie, writeth, that if you smoake the holes of the wormes with drie Dre or Cowdung, that way which the winde then bloweth, that it doth expell them from the eating and gnawing after of your hearbes. And Plinie writeth, that the pure mother or some of the oyle (without the mixture of salt) sprinckled on the wormes, doth also driue them away.

And if the wormes hang to the rootes of the plants or hearbes through the naughtinesse of the dung, then weede the Beds and plants verie diligently.

And Frontius writeth, that the hearbes shall not be harmed of the Garden Flye, if that by a natural meanes you doe plant or sowe in many places amongst your hearbes, the hearbe named Rocket.

And

And Anatolius in his husbandrie instructions writeth, that the garden Flies be killed with the sprinckling of sharp Vinegar, mingled with the iuice of Henbane on them. And the like dooth the sodden liquor or water of the Hearbe named Fleabone, as writeth Pamphilius the Greeke, in which the hearb named Nigella Romana, hath for a time bene soaked & sprinkled, kill the garden flies. Remedies against the greene flies of the garden.

And if you will not haue your seedes after the sowing, to be gnawen or eaten of any creeping thinges in the Garden, then before the sowing soake your seedes in the iuice of the Hearbe named Sengreene or Houslike, as before was taught.

And Anatolius writeth, that the seedes shal not be gnawen if you sowe or set them in the ground, in the shell of a Tortoise.

And Palladius writeth, that your Pot-hearbes shal not engender noysome wormes, or other creeping thinges, if that you drie the seedes before the sowing in a Tortoise skinne, or else set the hearbe Mints in many places, and especially among the Coleworts: as the like as some write, doth a little quantitie of the bitter fitches or tares (sowne amongst) preuaile, especially if the same be sowne amongst the Radishes, and rapes.

Also, the auncient writers will, that the Fitches, which bee a graine like to Peason, be sowen in many places among the Pot-hearbes, for a surer defence against all creeping thinges.

And Frontius writeth, that if the Pot-hearbes be sprinckled with the brine made of Goose dung, that the same defendeth hearbes from being gnawen of the Garden wormes, or other creeping things.

And now as touching the Caterpillars which the greekes named Palmer wormes, that greatlye annoy and spoyle the hearbes of the Garden: Plinie willeth, that you sprinckle the Plants or trees with bloudy twigs, as a speciall remedy to driue them so away. Diuers helps and secrets against the caterpillers.

And other auncient writers teach, that if you haue Riuer creuises in many places of the Garden, that the same doth likewise driue away the Caterpillers.

And certaine others will, that you sprinkle the plantes with the dewe of that water, in which the vine ashes haue bene soaked, as a present remedie.

And there be other which will, that about the bodies and armes of the trees, ye kindle and make a smoke of brimstone and vnsleaked lime togither, is a speciall remedie to driue them away.

And there are certaine other, which first do soften the seds in that Lie which is drawne and made of the Fig ashes, before they sowe them in the ground, or rather in the blood of the Caterpillers, or in the iuice of the hearbe named the houseleeke. and some will also, to sprinkle of the fig ashes vpon the Caterpillers.

And certaine rather will, that you sowe his hearbe in fashion to a big Onion, and named of the Apothecaries Squilla in the Garden, or hang the same heere and there about the Garden, for a present remedie against the Catterpillers.

And some will, to burne the Toade stooles or Mushroms, which grow out of the Walnut tree, and be stiffe and hard, that with the strong sauour of them, they may so be destroyed.

And some doe write, that a sauour made of the onely dung of Backes in many places of the garden will destroy them: And if the Caterpillers do yet withstand these former helps, then vse this practise heere vnder taught: which is, that you take Dre pisse, and the mother of Dyle, and mix them equally togither, after set the same ouer the fier vntill it be hot, and taking the same of, let it coole, which being cold, sprinkle on the pothearbes and trees, and the same shall destroy them as Anotalius writeth of experience.

And Palladius writeth, that if you burne small bundles of Garlike blades without heads. making a smoke with them, in the allies and paths of the Garden about, that the same will flea them with the onely sauour.

And certaine Greeke writers will. that you take a few of the Caterpillers in the next Garden or Orchard, and seeth them

them in water with the hearbe Dill which being colde, sprinkle on the hearbes or trees, and in such places where they be, and the same shall destroy them. But take very diligent heede, that none of this water fall, either on your face or hands.

A practise of the greek husbandmen against the Caterpillers.

And some will, to burne of Galbanum, or the hooues of goats, or the Harts horne, making a smoake in the Garden, which way the winde then bloweth, as a speciall remedy to flea them.

And there be some which will, that you steepe the Vine ashes in water for three daies, and after sprinkle plentifully of the same on your hearbes and trees, as a present remedie to driue away Caterpillers.

A singuler sprinckling stock to driue away the Caterpillers.

And Diophanes the Greeke, writeth, that the Mothes which kil the leeks may be destroyed on this wise, if that you take the maw of a weather sheepe new killed, not washed, but hauing all the filth hanging thereon, which lightly couer or poulder with earth in that place, where they most swarme in the garden, and after two dayes, you shall finde a marueious companie of Mothes and other flies heaped thereupon, which either carry away, or bury very deepe in that place, that they rise not again. And when you haue thus done but twise or thrise togither, you shall vtterly destroy them for comming any more.

And against snailes, both with shell and without shel, the new mother or some of oyle sprinkled on them, doth greatly preuaile, and the like doth sot of Chimnies, scattered on the beds, driue them away.

Helps against snailes.

And Iulius Fronto writeth, that all pot hearbes be greatly holpen and defended from noysome Beastes, if by them the hearb Rocket be either sowne or set.

A secrete for pothearbs out of Iulius Fronto.

Certaine

Certaine helpes and secrets against the Garden Moles, Pismires, Gnats, Flies with long hinderlegs, Breeßs, Field-Mice, Backes, Serpents, Frogs, and Todes, which gnawe, harme, and destroy, as well the trees and fruits, as other hearbes and floures. Chap. 14.

Why Moles are a disquiet and griefe to Gardners.

AND for that ỹ Moles in many places of gardens, through their digging and casting vppe, doe leaue bare both the seedes, and yong plantes comming vp, to the vttermoste destruction of the good encrease of them, which by that meanes doth not a little disquiet or greeue the Gardener, to see his painefull labours so to be subuerted and come vnto ruine, contrarie to his expectation hoped after. And therefore such helpes against their mallice, as either the auncient Greekes, or the Latinistes haue written of, shall heere at large be vttered.

a proper secret to driue away Moles in the earth.

And first the Greekes write, that the Moles will at no time dig or cast vp in the garden, where the hearbe named Tick-weed, otherwise in Latin Palma Christi, doth either grow of their owne accord in that ground, or brought otherwise by hap, and there set.

And both Paxamus & Sotion the Greeke, write, that if you take a walnut, and bore a hollow hole, filling the same afterward with Chaffe, Rosen, and Brimstone, and caused to smoake, put the same into the bigger and newer hole of his comming forth of the earth, stopping diligently all his other holes, and that none of the smoke passe forth, And in such sort leaue that one and bigger hole wide open, that the aire may the better driue the smoke into the earth, which after the Mole feeleth the sauour thereof, doth either forthwith runne some other way from thence, or is found choaked or dead in the earth.

An easie practise of the auncient husbandmen in taking of Moles.

And some write, that you may take all the Moles in your garden by an easier manner: If that you get a quick Mole, put the same into a deepe earthen pot, setting the edge to the earth: which Mole, after a while feeling himselfe thus inclosed, will crye

crie out, and after the other Moles in that ground doe thus heare him cry, they will hastily draw neere vnto him, and minding to help him forth, will so fall into the pot. And now by this same meanes, if you will, you may take and destroy all the Moles in your garden.

Diuers special remedies either to kill or driue away moles.

And some will, to take the rote of the white Mose wort, making the same into fine pouder, and after mixing it with barly meale, to worke it together with milke and wine, and after make it vp into little balls, which lay within the holes of the Moles. And Albertus writeth, that if you stop the holes of Moles with either Garlike, Onions, or Leekes, that any of these, doe either force him forthwith to run from that place, or to cast vp a new in some other place.

A proper hunting and driuing away of moles out of the garden.

And some will, to bringe vp Cats to runne onely in the Garden, for the better driuing of them away. And some also do bring vpp Weesells tame, letting them after runne vppe and downe in the Garden, and to runne into the hoales of the Moles, which through their stincke in hunting after the Moles, do euen so driue them out of the ground.

And some will, to fill the mouth of the hoale with the pouder of the red marking stone, or red Oker, mixed with the iuice of the wild Cowcumber. And some wil to take Galbanum, and Brimstone, filling a Walnut shell therewith, and to make a smoake into the hoale, which so driueth them away.

And Palladius writeth, that if you bestrike the lower part of your tree with redde Oker, mixed with Tarre, and hang a Jay thereby, that the same doth so gather Pismiers al in one place, that you may after easily destroy them.

And certaine others will, to annoint the stalks of Plants and bodies of trees, with the Oile made of Lupines, or rather with the pouder of Lupines, mixed with Oile. And sundry write, that they may be destroied with the onely mother and some of Oile sprinckled on them.

And Palladius writeth, that you may driue away the great heape and swarmes of the Pismiers gathered together, if in-

a marualous practise agēst Pismires:

to their heap you put the hart of an Dule: and if the pismires runne and stray abroad in your garden, then strew or sift Ashes in the allies, and pathes about where they run. And it doeth likewise auaile against their straying abroad, if that you bestrike the pathes about where they runne, either with bright white chalke, or with oyle, as hath beene experienced.

And the saide Palladius writeth, that you may driue away the Pismires, if into their holes you sprinckle of the powder of the Dragantie and Brimstone mired together, or if you fill and stuffe the holes of the Pismires with the powder made of drie Oyster-shelles burned, it doth likewise destroy them.

And Paxamus writeth, that if you take of the pismires, and burne of them in the middle of thy Garden, that the rest will forsake the ground. And the saide Author writeth, that if you make a stinke with Rosen before their holes, they will not after come forth, but forsake the place.

Other practises against the Pismires:

And he also writeth, that if you compas them with white woll, chalke, or red oaker, or else strewe round about them the hearbe named Dragany, but especially those waies where they haue common course: For then neither will the Pismires come neere that plant where it is, nor runne vp that tree which is bound about the body with this hearb: so much they hate the sauour thereof.

And Palladius writeth, that if you bestrike and annoint the plants and trees with red oaker, tarre, and butter mired together, that the same driueth them away.

And certaine Greeke writers will, to annoint the plants and trees with the gall of a Bull, the mother of Oyle, and tar tempered together, which so driueth them away. And they also write, that if you poure of the propper dropping of the Poppe mired with Vineger into their holes, the same doth kill them.

Also some write, that you may destroy the pismires with the onely sauour of the stinke or smoake, of the wilde Cowcumber burnt.

And

And certain wil, that if the pismires creep vpon your trees to make broad round rings about the bodies and arms of the trees, with white chalke: for that by twice or thrice, or oftner so doing, you shall cause them to forsake the creeping vp any more on those trees.

That pismires creepe not on your trees.

And Plinie writeth, that you may destroy the pismires, if that you stop their holes, either with sea mud, or with ashes, if they be not wet. And yet the hearbe Heliotropion (which some suppose to be the Marigold) by strewing the leaues on the holes, doe chiefly destroy them. And certaine write, that the water, in which the vnbaked tiles hath bene soked, poured vpon the holes, doth destroy them: and now these instructions against the Pismiers shall heere suffice.

A secret of Pliny for the killing of Pismires.

And Democritus in his rules of husbandry writeth, that the Gnats which haunt and feed in gardens may be driuen away, with the onely burning and making of a smoke of the hearbe Calamynte.

Sundry remedies for the driuing away of Gnats.

And the saide Democritus writeth, that the decoction of the hearb Organye in vinegar, and sprinckled on them, doth likewise driue them away, as hath bene experienced.

And the Gnats also be chased away, if that you steepe the hearbe Rue, or hearbe grace in water, and sprinckle the same on the beds where they haunt: and they be also destroied and chased away with the smoke made of Galbanum, brimstone and Comin mixed together, and likewise chased away with the decoction of the hearbe named Flebane, sprinckled on the beds.

And certaine Greekes write, that the stalkes of Hempe-flouring, doe driue away the swarme, or huge company of Gnattes: and the like doth the smoake made of the Oxe dung.

A sprinckle made of the hemp flouring to driue away Gnats.

And Palladius writeth, that the ponder of the rote of Elecampane, mixt with the ashes of hoens burned, and the same sprinckled on the beds, doth driue the gnats away: and Pliny writeth that a smoke made onely of the gum named Galbanum, doth driue away the Gnats.

And Byritius the Greeke writeth, that if you sprinckle the

Certaine practises of the Greekes against the flies with the long hinder legs.

place moste swarming of those flies (with the long hinder legges) the powder of Rose-woort, Oxyment, and milke mixed together, that the same will either kill them, or driue them quite away, and the same Byritius writeth, that Alom with the hearbe Organie steeped in milke, and the same sprinkled on the beds and hearbes, letteth them from touching those hearbes after. And the Bayleaues or hearbes beaten to powder, with the roote of the blacke Rose-woort, and tempered either in milke or in water or hony mixed together, the same sprinckled on the hearbes, doth either flea them or driue them quite away.

A secret for the driuing away of those flies.

And certaine Greekes write, that if you burne of those flies in the middle of your Garden, that the sauour of them will driue away the rest: and the like doth the wetting of some of them, and after couering them there with wet mud.

And Byritius writeth, that the Flies with the long hinder legs will not after touch any of those hearbs which be sprinkled with the water, wherein the Leeke or Centorie hath bene steeped.

Didimus practise against the Breese.

And against the Breeses (which bee Flies that eate the Corne as it growth) and doe besides much harme to hearbs, Didimus willeth to sow three graines or cornes of mustard-seede, neere to the roote of such a tree, and among the hearbes eaten with them, which so driueth them away. And against the field and Garden-mice, Apuleus willeth to steepe your seedes before the sowing in an Ore or Cowes gall. And certaine will, to stop their heales with the leaues of Rhododaphnes, for that when they seeke to come forth and gnawe those leaues, they after die.

Remedies against the garden and field-mice.

And certaine Greekes will, to take the Powder made of the wilde Cow-cumber, Henbane Seedes, bitter Almonds, and blacke Rose-woort (of each a like quantitie) and the same so worke together with oyle, which laide or put into the hoales of the Garden of Field-mice, driueth them speedilie away. And Plinie writeth that the Garden Mice may bee driuen away, if you sprinckle the beds with the Ashes of the Weesel,

Weesel, or with that water sprinckled on the beds, in which a Catte hath bin washed. And the seeds also (before the sowing) steeped in the gall of an Ore, doth driue them from the eating of the seeds at any time after.

And Florentine writeth, that the Snake or Adder will not lodge or abide in that garden, where either Wormwood, Mugwort, or Sothernwood, be aptly planted in the corners, or round about the garden. And if they haunt any Garden, then with the smoake made of the drie Lilly roote, or Harts horne, or of the hooues of the Goate, they may speedily be driuen away. And Democritus writeth, that if you cast the greene Oken leauee vpon either the Snake or Adder, that he dieth forthwith: or if any spitteth falling into their mouth open.

How snakes & adders may be kild.

An Florentine writeth, that neither the Snake no, Adder will come neere that place, where either the fat of a Hart lieth buried or the roote of a Centorie, or the stone of Gagates or the dung of a Kyte lyeth.

And you may driue away any venemous creeping thing, if that you take the pouder made of Nigella, Pelitory, Galbanum, Harts-horne, Brimstone, Pecendanum, and the hoofs of the goat, mixing all these together by equall portions, and wrought together with vinegar: make litle bals of the same, and with the same make a smoke, and it driueth al forthwith to forsake the ground vpon the sauour thereof.

how any place may be free from the snake or adder.

And they hate all strong sauours, which be either made with Garlike or Onion blades, and such like: and the flame of fier also, which greatly dimmeth their sight. And the Adders do likewise loue the Sauine tree, the Iuie tree, and the Fenell, as the Toades doe the Sage, and the Snake the hearbe Rocket.

Vnder what the adders and snakes ioy to be:

And the Snakes and Adders (of all other thinges) do most hate the ash tree, for that they cannot abide the touching of the long shadow in the morning, nor that in the euening, but run farre from it. And Pliny writeth a maruelous matter of ỹ ash tree, for if a snake (saith he) be compassed about with the greene ash tree leaues, and a fier made in the middest, that he will

The naturall contrarite of the ash and the snake or adder worthy to be noted.

will rather run into the burning fire, then towards the leaues so much he hateth the ash tree.

Of the Ferne against snakes of adders.

And certaine write, that a smoke made of the drie Ferne burned, doeth driue away Snakes and Adders out of that ground.

And Palladius writeth, that the Snake and adders and all other venemous vermine be driuen away with euery sharp and stincking sauour fumed abroad.

How toades may be driuen away and killed

And the Toads may be driuen away and killed (as write the Greekes and Latines) with those helpes and remedies, which we haue before taught, in the remedies against the snakes and adders, and therefore to recite those againe, were heere superfluous.

Africanus practise for the driuing away, and killing of the Backes.

And Africanus writeth, that the Backs will not flye vp and downe in that garden, where through the walles and paths you hang of the boughes or branches of the Plane tree. And they be also killed with the onely smoake made of Iuy branches in the allies about.

And against the chirping of the frogs, which perhaps seeme to disquiet the Gardner in the sommer nights, vse this helpe and secret written of the Greek Africanus, which willeth to set a bright light before them, or to hang a bright Lanterne light on some tree, that the same light may shine vpon them like the light of the Sunne, which causeth them by the light thereof, to cease their chirping, as hath beene tryed by sundry oftentimes.

Now (gentle reader) I haue heere vttered those special incommodities which happen in Gardens, vnto which I haue adioyned the most proued and true experiences, against those euils, out of the best Authours, both of the old and new writers in this Art: least that any (hauing delight in Garoning) should be frustrate of these helpes. And thus an end of this first Booke.

(·.·)

The second Booke instructeth diuers manner of sowing, setting, and ordering of the most Pot-hearbes, Flowers, &c. with the care and secrets taught, aswell for the health of the bodie, as to the pleasure and delight of the eye.

NOw that I haue ended my first booke, such as it is: I minde here to enter into the second, In which shall be entreated of the diuers manner, care, ordering, and dilligence to be bestowed, both in the sowing, setting, and remouing of the most Pothearbs, sweet smelling hearbes, and pleasant flowers, as well for the vse of Phisicke, as for pleasure to carrie in the hand, and otherwise to serue the pot, And these, by dilligence of the author, gathered out of the treasures of the best writers of the Greekes and Latines in this art: and experienced by the often practises of sundrie skilfull Gardners in diuers realms and countries, vnto our great vse and commoditie. And such worthy secrets also taught in these matters, as the like hath not beene vttered in the English tongue. And for that I meane not to seeme long in rehearsal of the benefit of these vnto mans health and delight: I minde therefore (as a number of writers do) to entreat first of that well knowne hearbe, both vnto the Cittie and Countrie, named the Lettuce: whose nature, care, properties, and benefite also to the health, shall after appeare.

Of the ordering, care, and secrets of the Lettuce. Chap. 1

AND first the Garden Lettuce (of which we minde here to entreat) doeth delight to be sowne in a fatte and well wrought ground, beeing dunged before, and moyst at the sowing; for so it appeareth by the fourth day after the sowing,

so

so that the seeds be not otherwise burnt, and the ground vnfruitfull.

And it may also be sowne all the yeare through, if so be the ground be well dunged and dressed, and the seeds often watered, for so they come the faster and plentifuller vp. And seedes which you sow in the harueſt may well be remooued and set againe in the moneth of December, and in beddes (if you will) with other hearbes: for so it well abideth the colde winter time, and is also much comforted thereby, for that it may well agree and come vppe with other hearbes, vnto the Seed-time. And to make it spread of breadth in the growing, you must then remoone each from other, when as fiue leaues be sprung vppe, and set them a good space asunder, whereby they may spread the larger: and the pressing downe of them, must especially be done in warme daies, in lightly cutting the leaues about, and after laying the shardes of Tiles, or tufts of earth to presse them downe.

And least the Lettuce should grow hard, it ought to be often set, and plentifully watred, for by that means the leaues will grow both tenderer and softer, so that the rootes before bee steeped and couered with soft dung in the new setting againe.

And both Palladius and Columella write, that if through the beds, and round about them, be often strewed the riuer or sea Sand, that leaues wil so become white, if the leaues before be gathered and tyed vppe togeather. And to make the Lettice growe lowe by the ground, and to be thicke and broad in the head, you must then remoue and set them when as they be growne vp an handfull high, and often clippe the tops of the leaues round about, and in the new setting again scrapefaire the rootes of the Lettice, and after dip them in soft and new Cow dung, and set them so in the groũd, which after the setting, often and plentifully water, and in the growing vppe alwaies keepe vnder, by clipping the toppes of the leaues, and laying tile shardes on the heades of them, for by that meanes they increase into a breadth, and not to a height.

An

And they be also made the sweeter in eating, if in the growing they be often removed and set againe, and that in the setting, as they begin to grow vp in some height, that then the leaues to be tyed vp close together, and being growne a little more in height, then to presse them downe, by laying tileshards or some other things somwhat waightie on them. And to make them pleasant of smell, take and put the seedes within the sweete Citrone seed, and set them so in the grouñ or else keepe the seed (for certaine daies) in sweete Rose water: and heere note, that of this, the leaues become the tenderer, if the rootes (before the setting againe bee dipped in new Cow dung (as is aboue saide) and watred often with running water, or for two dayes before the plucking, the leaues close bound together.

The Phisicke helpes.

And now as touching the Phisicke helps of this herb, you shal first vnderstand that the same is cold and temperately moist in the second degree. And *Aegineta* writeth, that the Lettuce dooth manifestly coole and moisten and prouoke sleep: and as it doth nourish like other potherbs, so it doth cause good blood in man.

And yet the often eating rawe of this hearb, doth harme colde stomakes, and causeth dimnes of sight: therfore they ought oftner to be eaten sod then rawe.

But the cholerick, may as safely eat them raw as sodden, and finde commoditie to the body by eating of them raw. And the eating of them while they be yong is more profitable to the stomacke, and encreaseth milke in womens brests: but when the same is growen to be hard in eating, then it is both drie and bitter, & through his heat then the more opening, and yet doth the eating then engender euill blood, and so causeth harme often to such as eat thereof, as by hindring the sight and corrupting the matter of Sperme. And the eating of them whiles they be yong and tēder, doth help an ague, as wel sodden, as being eaten raw.

And sod with vinegar and a litle safron put in the same,

doth help both the stopping of the Liuer and milt, Also eaten raw, or sod, and being mixed with vinegar and sugar, doth open the Liuer and milt, and causeth good blood, and helpeth the tertian ague.

And the Lettuce sodden and mixed with oyle Oliue doth heale the dropsie being eaten with meat. And a plaister made of Lettuce, with oyle Oliue, doth mightily asswage hot impostumes. And the seedes eaten of milch women in meat, doth increase milke, and amendeth the sight.

Also the seeds drunk in wine, do procure sleep. And the seeds brused and drunk, do stay the often imaginations of the lust in the sleep and abateth the courage thereof. And it prouoketh sleep, if the seeds be bruld and tempered with the milke of a woman childe and the white of an egge, be laide plaister wise on all the forhead and temples. And the powder of the seeds mixt with the milke of a woman child do prouoke and cause sleep. And the like the seeds worke to him which hath an ague, giuen him to drink with warm water. And the seeds giuen in drinke, do for the most part speedily help the shedding of nature. & he which drinketh the iuce of Lettuce, fasting, shal not be drunk that day.

And the Lettuce plucked vp by the rootes, with the left hand, before the sunne rising & the same laid vnder the couerings of the bed, the sick body not knowing therof, doth after cause the person to sleepe. And if fiue leaues, three or one leafe, be laid priuily vnder the bolster of the sick body but in such sort that the leafe or leaues plucked off the next stalk, be laid beneath and vnder his feet, and the leaus plucked off from the top of it be laid vnder his head: they cause sleep as before said: and the often eating of Lettuce, is both dāgerous to such womē as be apt to conceiue with child & such as be with child (as ancient men write) for they do not only cause barrenes, but those which then be with child, shall after be deliuered of children far vnlike their Fathers in that they shalbe both raging in minde, & fooliſh in wit: And therfore the much vse of them, is to be eschewed of such women, euen as they would from a furious dogge or

adder

adder, whose biting they greatly feared. Also the very often eating of Lettuce doth greatly harme such as be short winded, flegmatick persons, & such as spit blood. And although the verie often eating of the raw or sodden Lettuce be no les dangerous then the heatb Hemlock; yet we may often eat of them in the sommer, rather as a medicine then for any nourishment, as both to coole and moisten the stomack. And the eating of them doth make men soluble, in that through the coldnes and moistnes of them, they so coole & temper the excessiue heat of the liuer. And some write, that the eating of Lettuce at night after other meals, doth the better procure sleep that night following.

And as the manner of the preparation of the Lettuce (now in our time) is with vinegar, salt and oyle, wherby to cause a better appetite to the meat, then to be eaten, & both to temper the heat of the blood, and mittigate the heate of the liuer and hart: and yet the often vse of this doth greatly hinder the increase of sperme, as is aboue saide.

These hitherto of the Phisicke helps and properties of the Garden Lettuce.

Of the ordering, care and secrets, both of Endiue and Succory.

Chap. 2.

THe Endiue and Succory haue a like ordering and dressing, sauing that the Endiue better abideth the colones of winter.

And of this in colde Countries it may be sowne neresh the end of harueste, and it will become white in the growing, if the same be sprinckled with sand, and often watred, and that with great shewers of rayne, if it be after couered and washed, lying on the sand, for that it delighteth in moysture and loose ground.

And after that foure of the leaues be sufficiently sprung vp, then may the same be remooued, and set againe in a well dunged place.

For there be some writers, which will the rootes to be dipt in fresh Cowdung before the setting againe in the earth.

The Phisicke helps of Endiue,

Endiue cooleth and drieth in the second degree: and the leaues and seeds bee vsed in medicines, but the roote hath no propertie at al in phisicke. And the greene leaues be profitable, but the drie leaues haue no vse in medicines, for that they then worke nothing at all.

And Endiue comforteth the heart, in that it cooleth and delaieth the burning therof, against the deseases of the liuer, without harme, in that by nature, it hath such a qualitie and propertie of it self. And against that disease called the kings euill, take the sirrop of the Endiue simply, with the which mix the water of the decoction of Harts tongue, which giue to the patient to drinke, for it is a singuler remedie.

And the iuice of the leaues annointed on burning pushes doth qualifie the heat of them.

And the herbe bruised and laide plaisterwise on hot impostumes doth mightily helpe.

And the herbe laid without on the side, doth delay and cease the heat of the liuer.

And if the green herbe cannot be had, then aply the seeds laying them brused on such hot griefes, which greatly help. And the Endiue may in like maner be eaten as the Lettuce, as either any way be eaten rawe, or sodden with meat. And the Endiue sodden with vinegar, doth bind the belly. And bruised with vinegar, and that laid on the left pap, doth help the Cardiak passion without doubt. And it helpeth the holy fire, hot impostumes, and hot swellings, if the same be bruised and mixed with Ceruse and vinegar, and so laide plaister-wise on such places. And the iuice of it mixt with vinegar and rose water, doth ease the paines of the head comming of heat: and the herb drunk with wine, doth amend both the default and griefe of the liuer and bladder.

And in the spitting of bloud, and the excesse of Sperme, it helpeth by drinking of it two or three daies together. And all such partes which may be holpen by cooling, may with the iuice of it, the Ceruse and vinegar mixed together, and so annointed on those places, doe greatly auaile.

And the distilled water of Endiue, drunk vnto the quanti-

ty

ty of two ounces at a certaine time, and that morning and euening, doth help the straightnes & stopping of the brest.

And in the same maner and quantity drunke, is profitable to women with childe, for that it strengthneth them and amendeth their senses, and the same water drunk morning and euening, vnto the quantity of foure or fiue ounces at a time, doth help the plague, putteth away the kings euill, ceaseth thirst, being more largely drunck of, and qualifieth the burning of the liuer. And it helpeth against the paine of the side, and the pricking which is felt about the hart, if there be drunke three or foure ounces at a time, both morning and euening. These hitherto of the poperties of Endiue.

The Phisicke helpes of Succory.

Succory is of a cold and dry quality, and somwhat more then the Endiue. But *Aegineta* writeth, that it cooleth and drieth in the first degree, & hath the qualitie of binding.

And now this hearb sodden with wine, & eaten with meat profiteth the stomack and helpeth degistion, and the flowers bruised with the Roses, and laide plaister-wise vpon the gout, doth forthwith ease the paine thereof. And this plaister laide on the holy fire, doth delay the great heat thereof. And a potion made of the iuice of Succory, Endiue, and the harts tougue, mixed togither with sugar, and after boyled with a little water and vinegar together, and if any vse the same oftentimes, it doth help the stopping of the liuer, and milt. so that after the same be taken: the purging pills of Rubarb, & (after that) the same cõforter, which they name the three Sanders, prepared of the Apothecaries, And the iuice of the Succory boyled, doth loose the belly and helpeth the stomack, the liuer and the kidneis. And it putteth away the pestilent pushes, if linnen cloathes dipped in the water of it, be laide on those pushes. And the hearb bruised with the roote, & of the same made flat round cakes, which after being mixed and dissolued in Rose water, annoint any scabbed place there-with, and it will both heale, and make the skinne faire after. And the flowers of Succory, cast among,

mong a heape of Pismires or Ants, will soone after become sored as blood: And the flower of Succory gathered in the morning and after distilled in *Balneo Maria*, doth help diuers diseases of the eies: as the pinne and web, the mist of the eies hindering the sight, the vlcers of the eies, and many other diseases of the eies. These hitherto of the properties of Succorie.

Of the ordering, care, and secret of the hearbe Blete. Chap 3.

And first of the Blete, there be two kinds, the one red or blacke, and the other white: for the red in the growing becommeth so red both in leaues and stalks, as the scarlet in a maner, which after the longer growing, becommeth purple of colour, and in the end into a blacke colour through which the same of some is called the blacke Blete. And the white groweth like to the white beets, both in the stalks and leaues being vnsauoury & biteth very little, or of a small sharpnes: And both kinds do well spring vpin a garden, & that speedily.

And it may be sowen in any ground: but rather in a well dressed ground, and after the same be well sprong vp, it needeth not after to be weeded or toned.

And yet some write, that the Blete ioyeth in a fat ground, being well turned with dung, for so they say it will best prosper. And when they be sprung vppe vnto their seeding, then they decay not after in that ground, for that they renue yearly through the falling of the seeds: so that if a man would, he shall scarcely weed them out of the ground but that they will continue many yeares after, without any further trauell. And Palladius thinketh it best to be sowne in march, and after it once prospereth (after the sowing or setting) it neuer decaieth, as he writeth.

The Phisick helps.

Blete which commonly men eat, is cold and moist in the second degree. And now the same is sometimes eaten with meat, so that it first be sodden in water, & fryed with Oyle and butter, and after that seasoned with salt or vinegar, or veriuce, & then the eating of it in such sort doth litle harm,

if the same be not often vsed. For by this experience hath bin noted sundry times, that the often eating of it (although in such sort prepared) do cause vomiting, paine of the bowels and stomack, and the succoring of choller by fluxe. And a plaister made of it with Oile, and that laid on the place of the milt, doth helpe the greese thereof, and by eating of this hearbe, as we haue aboue said, it doth loose the belly of propertie, when as the same is become costiue or bound, by any clammy matter. These hitherto of the properties of the Blete.

Of the ordereng, care, and secrets of the hearbe Spinage. Chap. 4.

Spinage is sowen very well in the moneth of September and October to serue both in the winter time, and Lent following, in well dunged ground. And the Spinage also may be sowne alone in beds: the ground beeing fat and well turned in with dung. And when the same is well come vppe, then may you cut away the one halfe of the turfe at one time and the other halfe at another time. For so the vertue and commoditie of it will indure a long time.

The Phisicke helps.

Spinage is colde and moist in the end of the first degree, and the same sodden and eaten with meat, doth soften the hardnesse of the belly, and taketh away the paines and griefes both of the brest and lungs.

Also it nourisheth better then doth the Orach as writeth *Serapian*, for that it doth qualifie choller, cleanse the body, and strengthen the stomake: and the decoction of this hearb drunk, expelleth the euill humors, and causeth easie drawing of breath. Both the often and daily eating of it with meat, doth engender Melancholie, like as the Lettuce doth. And whosoeuer shall haue greuous paines in the backe, and a costiue belly, let them eat of this herb sodden, and drinke, or suppe of the broth, and they shal haue ease and remedy in short time by Gods help.

And

And the herb helpeth the paine of the throte, comming of bloud and red choller. These hitherto of the properties of the Spinage!

Of the ordering, care, and secrets of the Orach or Arage. Chap. 5.

THe hearbe named Orach or Arage may be sowne from the beginning of the spring, vnto Harueſt: that is from February, March, Aprill, and all other moneths following vnto harueſt. But some of it is sowne in the moneth of December, in earth well trimmed and dunged, and the better it commeth vp, being thin sowne. Also it much delighteth to be often fed with plentie of moisture, and if the season be drie, then in continuall moisture. And the seeds of the Orach may well be kept for foure yeares. But the seeds so soone as they be strewde or sown abroad, must be couered with earth. And the weedes growne among the young plants, must be still an end plucked vp by the rootes: And it requireth not to be remooued, yet the same groweth the better, if it be set thin: and Palladius willeth it to be sowne in Aprill, and to be watered all hot moneths thorowe vnto harueſt, for that it ioyeth in continuall moisture.

The phisicke helpes.

The hearbe named Orach or Arage, as writeth *Aegineta* doth moisten in the second degree, and cooleth in the first, of the which cause it softeneth the belly, and the seedes do cleanse, through which they profit the stopping of the liuer, and help the Iaundies.

And the Arage bruised and mixed with hony, doth take away the paine of the gout, if the same be laide plaister-wise on the greife.

And *Macer* affirmeth the like, that the hearbe bruised and mixed with salt Niter, honie, and vinegar, and the same layd plaister wise on a hot gout, doth ease the raging paine thereof: and the seedes of the Arage bruised and drunke with water and honie mixed together, doth help the sheading of the gall. Likewise the iuice laide on the holy fire, & on any other inflamation, doth ceaſe & qualifie it. And

this

this hearb applied vnto the womans priuy place, doth amend the euils within, and ceaſeth forth-with the paine of the matrice: and ſodden like vnto another pot hearb and ſo eaten, doth looſe the coſtiuenes of the belly, proceeding of heate, and aſwageth diuers ſwellings. And the hearb laid plaiſter wiſe on any member harmed either with thorne, ſplenter of wood, or naile, doth after drawe out the ſame without paine, and healeth the wound. And this hearb boyled with hony, and layd on rough nailes of the fingers, doth after looſe them without paine: and the ſeeds often drunke doth expel wormes, & prouoketh vomiting. And the hearb eaten do help ſuch as haue a hot lyuer. And if any eateth the hearb Mercury and Arage, ſodden together like pottage: the often eating of this pottage, doth looſe the belly, & take away the pinching paine of the bladder. And if any often vſe to eat of Arage, herb Mercury, & the Beetes ſodden together, he ſhall be deliuered of the ague in ſhort time after. Theſe hitherto of the hearb Arage.

Of the ordering, care, and ſecrets of Beetes. Chap. 6.

BEets deſire a fat earth, for ſo they beſt ioy: and the ſame which is eaten with meat, may be ſowne in the months of December, Ianuary, Februay and March, yea and all the yeare through (in a manner) it may be ſowne, if the ground before be well dreſſed, and turned in with dung. And when they become vp thicke together, then may they be remoued and ſet thinner a ſunder, but rather they ought then to be remoued, when as four or fiue leaues be ſprung vp, and at the ſetting againe be dipped in new cowdung, for by that meanes they growe white. And they delight alſo to be often remoued and digged about, for ſo they proſper the better: and a man may ſow them in that ground where mellons, citrons or gourds be, and when they be a little come vp, then to weed them often, that they may appeare to growe alone. And thoſe Beetes which be ſowne for ſeedes, be aptelt ſowne in the moneth of Auguſt, and remoued after the moneth of Ianuarie, in the furrowes or lowe places of the garden: for ſo

they bring forth the better seedes. And note that the Beets bring forth no seeds of any value in the first yeare, but better in the second yeare, and best in the third yeare, which then ought to be reserued either to eate or otherwise. And these seeds endure for foure yeares in good effect.

The Phisick helps.

Beetes are colde & moist in the third degree, and engendreth good bloud, and the white hath the propertie to purifie and cleanse all the euill humours of the body. And the head washed with the water in which the white Beetes are sodden, doth clense the head of the Dandrie, or that like to branne on the head: and the often eating of this hearb is not good, for that it encreaseth euill humors aswel in healthful as sicke persons: and the hearb is better commēded sodden then rawe for the stomacke. And sodden with mustardseed doth helpe the disease of the splene: and the iuce of it doth qualifie the holy fire. And the root of the Beet sodden, if of the same be dropped 3. or 4. drops hot into the eares, doth help the paine of them. And the iuce of the Beete taken with the seeds of Commin or Dill, doth after put away the gripings of the belly, & the iuice drawn vp by the nose with the oyle of bitter Almonds, doth purge the head: and the iuice rubbed on the gummes, doth cease the raging paine of the teeth. And this herb profiteth by medicine, for it nourisheth little, and by much eating of it, it doth gnaw and torment the stomack. The Beete groweth broad, if before it be growne vp with a stalke there be laide some broad slate-stone or tyle to make it grow into a breadth, through the waight layd on it. These hitherto of the properties of Beets.

Of the ordering, care and secrets of Coleworts. Chap. 7

THe Coleworts come vp in euery ayre, and may be sowne or remooued all the yeare through, in which time the grounde shall not be frozen or so much dryed, that it cannot be digged or dressed. And these seedes also continue and may be kept for foure yeres, and they also ioy in a mean fat ground,

dunged

dunged and digged: But it abhorreth the ſtiffe clay and grauelly groũd, and refuſeth alſo the chalkie and ſandy ground: And it ioyeth in dung laid about the roote, and commeth well forward by weeding, and the ſtronger it weareth, if it be well couered about with earth. And it delighteth both colde and raynie Countries, And when ſix leaues be come vp, then may it be remoued, but you muſt beſtrike the roote before with ſoft Cow-dung: and you may remoue it twice, when as it is in the greateſt leaues, which ſo cauſeth it to growe the bigger and to yeeld the more ſeedes. And if you can, let the ſame be done in a warme day if it be in the Winter time, and toward the euening if you do the ſame in the Sommer.

And theſe alſo which be ſowne in December, February, March, Aprill and May, may ſerue all the ſommer and winter, vntill they are killed by long froſts and ouermuch colde, And not only the yong Coleworts ſet in March or Aprill, but alſo thoſe which are ſet in June, July and Auguſt, ſhall be in winter great, ſo that they be ſet alone where nothing els is, and that in the growing the heades or tops of the leaues be often clipped and cut off, which ſo letteth their growing into height, and maketh them growe into a broadnes and thicknes in the head. And the thinner they be ſet, the bigger they will be: and therefore they muſt be ſet three foote aſunder.

Alſo take heed that you couer the Coleworts well about with earth in the ſetting, for by lying bare of the earth, the plant ſoone after dyeth.

And now all theſe before written, both in the ordering, dreſſing, and nature of it, may likewiſe be vnderſtood of the Cabadge to be ordred and vſed.

The Phiſicke helpes.

Coleworts be colde and moiſt in the ſecond degree, although of *Auicen* thought to be cold and drie. And now againſt the hardnes of making water, take of Colewortes, which put into ſcalding water, and boyling them a little, ſo that they be halfe rawe, and after powring the water almoſt cleane from them, vnto which put a little oyle, ſalte,

and commin, and after heat the same together a little more, and when this broth is somwhat cold, then sup of the same and eate likewise of the Cole-worts so soone as it hath first sodden, and this dayly do vntill you be throughly holpen.

And against all swellings and all vlcers, bruse Coleworts which haue but yong & tender stalks and leaues, those lay plaister-wise on cankers, and it wil both purge and heale them, which no other medicine of propertie doth, and yet before the same be laid on, the cāker must be washed with warme water twice a day, & the same yong Coleworts brused and laid on twice a day. And with the same remedie also may be holpen loose and brused places, and both vlcers and cankers on the pappes, and if the same be often applied and vsed as is aboue saide: and if the vlcer be such that it cannot abide the sharpnes therof, then may it be mingled with barly meale and so laid plaister wise on. And the raw Colewort eaten with the hearb grace or Rue, and the hearb Coliander shred together, or a little salt and barly meale with Oximell mixed togither, and with all to annoint the greeued place, doth heale the gowt, and helpe the ache of the ioynts in short time.

And for deafenes of the eares, bruse the same hearbs with wine, and the iuice pressed out, drop warme into the eare, & the patient shal finde ease shortly after. And the Colewort sodden in pleasant wine, and that drunk, bringeth downe the tearmes in women.

And the iuce of the same herb mixed with the purest hony, doth help certaine paines of the eies, if the same be dropped in the corners of them. And the iuce drunk for 40 daies with white wine, doth cure both the iaundice & the disease of the milt, as hath bene experienced. And three partes of the iuce of this hearb, and two partes of alom infused in vineger and mixed together, doth heale both the foule scruuines and leapry by annointing thereupon.

And the iuce of the Colewortes mixed with the meale of Fenigreeke and Vineger, and that laid plaister-wise or annoynted on the gowte, aches of the ioyntes and filthy

vlcers

vlcers, doth eaſe, clenſe, and heale them.

And the iuice alſo drawne vp by the noſe, doth purge the head. And the iuce of the Colewort drunk with wine, doth helpe the bite of an Adder or Snake: and the iuice drunke with red wine, doth help the cough: & the iuice taken with oyle, and holden a good while in the mouth, doth heale the bliſtering thereof. And the leaues of the Colewort eaten raw, do make a perſon ſleep well without dreaming: and the green ſtalks and root of the Colwort roſted vnder the hot imbers, and tempered with olde barrowes greace (the ſame applied in plaiſter forme) doth heale the continuall paines and ſtitches in the ſides.

And eaten raw with vinegar, it doth helpe the diſeaſed with the Splene, if the ſame be often vſed.

And *Auicen* writeth, that eaten alone it doth engender troubled bloud, and melanchollie, and his nouriſhment is ſmall, but the more and tenderer it is ſodden with fat fleſh, or Hens fleſh, the better and wholſomer it is to be eaten.

And the firſt broth of this hearb eaten, doth ſoften the belly, and prouoketh vrine, but the eating of the ſubſtance, doth binde the belly. And if you will make drie a moyſt bellie, then after the hearbe hath boyled a while, and that the firſt water be poured forth, pour in quickly the other ſeething water, and ſo boyle it new againe, vntill it become very ſoft and tender, and then eate of the ſubſtance thereof, ſeaſoned with pepper and ſalt, and ſo it bindeth the belly. But in eating the broth and ſubſtance together, it then worketh temperately, for the broth of the firſt ſeething Coleworts eaten alone, doth looſe the belly, and the ſubſtance tenderly ſodden and eaten, doth binde the belly. And by this appeareth, that the broth of the firſt ſeething of this hearb, doth looſe the belly, and the broth of the latter ſeething doth binde the belly.

And *Plinie* writeth, that the leaues of the Colewortes bruiſed, and laid plaiſter-wiſe, do marueilouſly heale the woundes of Dogges: and the Colewort tenderly ſodden, and giuen to young children to eate, doth cauſe them the

sooner to goe on foote: and if you will drinke much at a feast or banquet, and not to be drunke (and to suppe well and freshly at the supper after) then eate before your going to supper, raw Colewort leaues with vineger, so much as you wil, and after you haue supped, then eate again four or fiue raw leaues, and they wil after make you so fresh & hungrie, as though you had neither drunk nor eaten any thing at your supper before.

By this meanes you may drinke so much wine as you list, and no tbe ouercome or drunke with Wine: yea, & make great wagers vpon the same. And if any droppeth certaine droppes of wine into Coleworts, boyling fast on the fire, it forth-with ceaseth (from boyling any more) and changeth the colour, euen as a dead thing in it selfe. These hitherto of the properties of the Coleworts.

Of the ordering, care, and secrets of the Land Cresses. Chap. 8

THe Land Cresses, is an hearbe which the Germains do vse in their Sallets, but it may not be eaten without cooling hearbes, like as the Lettuce, Sorrell and Purcelain, which do so temper the fiery vertues, as Galen writeth. And now the Land Cresses may be sowen with Lettuce, for it so loueth and commeth vp the better, and doth also delight in the often watring, and in a shadowie place, where the Sun doth shine little vpon, and hateth the dung. And Palladius willeth it to be sowen in the moneth of Januarie.

The Phisicke helpes.

Land Cresses, as writeth *Plantearius*, is hot and drie in the fourth degree, and the seeds do especially serue vnto the vse of medicine, and may well be kept for fiue yeares. And the greene hearb also is of great effect, being dried somewhat before the ministring of it: and now the seedes haue the properties of heating and drying vp superfluous humours, and worketh in a manner so much as doth the Mustard seed: and also the seedes bruised and drunken in wine doth expell the dead yongling: and drunke with Vineger, it deliuereth the swelling of the Splene, and eaten with the

best

beſt Honie, they do help the cough, and open the breſt: and the ſeedes chawed, and holden in the mouth, do helpe the Palſie of the tongue.

And the Creſſes may not be eaten alone, as we haue aboue-ſaid, for that it diminiſheth mans ſtrength, and engendreth euill humours. Further, the ſeedes do ſtay the diſtilling or running of the head without harme, if they be taken whole, and the pouder of the ſeedes drawne vp by the noſe, do purge the braine, and help the paines of the head: and the ſeeds help the palſie, if they be ſodden in wine in a litle linnen bag, laid ſo hot to the palſie place as may be ſuffered: & in the litharge or ſleeping out of meaſure, let a ſneeze be made of the pouder of the ſeedes, and blowne vp: and againſt the paine of the hippe, & paines of the chollicke proceeding of colde, boyle the ſeeds in a bag of wine, and lay that hot vnto the greeued place; and the like diſeaſe and the ſtrangurie, the green hearbe ſodden in wine and oyle together, and the ſame laid hot on the belly. And the hearb drunk with mints in wine, doth driue forth both the long and flat wormes in beaſtes.

And againſt the hardneſſe of fetching of breath, and the cough, ſeeth the ſeeds of Organy in pleaſant wine: And the iuice of the hearb annointed, doth ſtay the ſheading of the haires of the head: and the iuce of the hearb dropped in the eare, doth helpe the ache and paine in the teeth. And the often eating of this hearbe in Sallets, doth giue a ſharpnes and readineſſe of wit. Theſe hetherto of the propertie of the Land Creſſes.

Of the ordering, cares and ſecrets of the Parcely. *Chap. 9*

The parcely ſeed being new, is long before the appearance aboue the earth, for that it appeareth not in forty or fifty daies after the ſowing, as writeth Plinie: But yet the olde ſeedes doe ſooner come vp. And now where the ſeedes bee ſowen, they doe plentifullye come vp, and thicke together, and after they once proſper in that ground, they ſildome decay, but continually renue and increaſe in more plenty. And

the

the seeds also prosper, being sowne so well in cold, as hot places, and in what earth you list, as writeth Palladius. And yet it loyeth to be continually watred, for that by the watering, it waxeth the stronger, and commeth vp the faster, and regardeth no aire nor ground: and the seeds as writeth Columella, may be sowne neere to ditches, or running waters, or wels: and if you will haue it grow big, and haue large leaues, then as Florentius writeth take so many seeds of the parcely as you can well hold between three of your fingers, and tie them together in a thin linnen cloth, which after set in dung and earth mingled together, and that put into a shallow hole, and it will after grow vp big and brode of leafe. And it will also grow of a maruelous bignes, if after it be come vp, you dig vp the earth round about it, and strew the chaffe of corne about the roote, and water the same often.

And if you will haue the leaues of the parcely to grow crisped, then before the sowing of them, stuffe a Venice ball with the seedes, and beat the same well against the ground, whereby the seedes may so be a little bruised, and then sowe them in the ground: or when the Parcely is well come vp, goe ouer the bed with a waighly Roller, whereby it may so presse the leaues down, or else tread the same downe with thy feet.

And Palladius writeth, that the male of this hearbe hath the blacker leaues, and shorter roote, but the female hearbe hath more crisped and harder leaues, a bigger stalke, and is sharpe and hot in taste. And Palladius also willeth, the seede of this hearbe to bee sowne in the Monethes of Februarie, March, Aprill, May, and that thicke together, and to be often watered.

The Phisicke helps.

Parcely of the Garden, is hot in the second degree, and dry in the third, & this parcely hath the propertie of piersing, and prouoketh vrine: and both the seedes and root preuaile against the stone. Also take the root of the parcely, which being drie, bruise wel, & after drinke the same with pure wine, and it wil cause a good braine, and good memo-

rie,

rie, and purge the blood. And the ſame drinke bringeth downe the tearmes of women: and the ſeeds eaten do take away the ſwelling of the ſtomacke, helps the dropſie, dry and pierce the euil humours, and conſume them. Alſo they cleanſe the Liuer, and put away the paines of the loynes and bladder.

And a ſallet made of Parcely, Sorrell, and vineger mixed togither, doth help the burning of the ague. And the herb giuen either raw or ſodden to eate, doth help the ſtopping of the bladder, prouoketh vrine, cleanſeth the kidnies, and draweth downe the tearmes, loſeth the winde of the body, taketh away the gripings of the belly, & helpeth the ſwelling of the ſtomacke: note, the ſeedes be principall, the root next, and the leaues be the third in working.

And the Parcely laide in plaiſter-forme with bread, on that ſore called the holy fire, doth heale the ſame. And aſwel the leaues as rootes ſodden, do help the ſtraightnes of making water, and the diſeaſe of the kidneis. And *Plinie* writeth, that the ſeeds bruſed, & annointed with the white of an egge on the reines, or ſoddden in water and ſo drunk, doth help the diſeaſe of the kidneis. And the ſeedes giuen in white wine doth help the iaundiſe.

And neither women in childe-bed nor milch nurſes, nor women with childe, may eat Parcely with their meats, for feare of hindring of conception, drying vp the milke in the breſtes, and cauſing the yongling to haue the falling ſickneſſe.

And Parcely throwen into Fiſh-ponds, doth reuiue and ſtrengthen the ſicke fiſh.

And the chawing of the freſh and greene Parcely, doth cauſe one to haue a ſweet ſmelling breth, or doth greatly amend a foule ſtinking breath, & therfore eſpecially is this hearb very commendable for women as haue ſtrong and ſtinking breaths, both to chawe and cary about them, that the ſtrong ſauour and ſmell of their breath may ſo be abated, and alſo to yeeld forth a ſweet breath. Theſe hitherto of the properties of Parcely.

Of the ordering, care, and secrets, of Sperage. Chap. 10.

THe Sperage (after the minde of the learned Greekes) ought to be sowen in fat and well dunged ground, in the spring time, and so many seedes sowen togither, as you may take vp with three of your fingers, and that each be set in little furrowes straight out and lightly couered with earth.

And Didimus writeth, that the Sperages ioy in fat and moyste ground, and well turned in with dung, and to be sowen in the spring time in furrowes three fingers long, and that there be sowen two or three graines togither, and that halfe a foote a sunder: and that there need no other dilligence and care in the first yeare, but onely to rake and digge vp the weedes cleane from them. And after forty dayes, the small rootes will be so folded and tyed one to another, that they will seeme to be fastned and ioyned togither in one, and this is named of the ancient Gardner, a Spunge.

And if the places shall be drye, in which you purpose to sowe the seedes, then steepe the seeds in soft Cowdung laid in the bottome of furrowes, euen as though they lay in ditches, And in very moyst places the seed ought to be sowen, from the top of the side or ridge of the bed, that the raine may so lightly slide off, and not water so much in the falling off. And when the seeds be thus sowen, then the Sperages which growe vp in the first yeare, ought to be broken off or cut away somwhat high, least by breaking off to neere the earth, (the young rootes being yet tender) you plucke vp the whole Spunge withall. And it must continue growing in one place for two yeares, and be nourished with continuall dunging and often weeding.

And in the third, and other yeares after, the Sperage may so open the eies of his branching: for vnles it be thus wrought, the stems broken off will increase the eyes of the Spunge, in such sorte, that the same will become as blinded, not suffering any Sperage after to shoote and spring forth. And that shall you keepe, out of which you haue gathered your seeds,

and

and set the Spunges in the winter, in ashes and dung tempered togither.

And there is another manner of setting the Sperages by Spunges, which after two yeares growth ought to be remoued and set againe into some open and well dunged place: and that the furrowes be made a foote distant a sunder, and not aboue nine fingers deepe, in which set the Spunges, that the earth lightly couered on them, they may easily spring vp.

And in the spring time when they begin to shoote vp and showe aboue the ground, then with an yron-forked dibbill, the earth round about must be raysed, that the shootes appearing, may the easilier come vp, and the root loosed in the earth may growe the bigger, and after the growing vp, to be in such sort weeded that the rootes be not weakened or to much loosed in the earth.

And all the winter through, the yong plantes of the Sperage must be couered ouer with a thicke and warme couer of strawe, whereby to defend them from the sharpe frostes that might otherwise destroy them. And when the spring is come, and that they be further appeered, then to batten them with dung.

The phisicke helpes.

Sperage doth heat and moysten, and therefore helpeth the palsie, the Kings euill & the strangurie. And the fruite and seeds be vsed in medicine, and indureth four yeares in full strength.

And the Sperage eaten with meate, doth help the stoppinge of the liuer and hardnes of the milt. And the roote sodden in wine, and drinking often thereof, doth help the shedding of the gall without doubt. And if the mouth be washed with the decoction of the Sperage, it ceaseth all the paines both of the mouth and teeth. And profitable is the Sperage to be eaten for the stomack: and ioyned with commine seedes, they put away the swellings of the stomacke and passion of the Collick.

And the eating of them do amend the sight, soften gently the belly, & purge the brest, the bowells and the raynes,

and maketh a very good sauour in all the body, but the vrine then stinketh: and being sod in wine & the same drunk, doth help the paines, both of the kidneis and loynes. And the roote drunke in white wine, doth ease the paine of the stone.

And certain others doe affirme, the same profitable for women to drinke with white wine, for the greefe of their priuy place And the root sodden in vineger, doth help the swelling and foule spots of the skin, like vnto the leaprie.

These hither to of the properties of the Sperrage.

Of the ordring, care, and secrets of Sauery. Chap. 11.

Sauery may be sowne in rough and leane ground, in February and December, either alone or mixt among other hearbes. And this hearbe may be set in borders, either in slippes or in roots, and is much vsed also in meates and broths and therfore it may ill be spared out of the garden.

The Phisicke helpes.

Sauery in qualitie is hot and drye in the second degree, and this hearbe eaten with creame, doth amend a colde stomack by purging it: and if any drinketh of this herb, it helpeth and defendeth him from falling into a sound, & taken in wine, it helpeth the stopping and other defaultes of the liuer, the milt, and the lungs, and cleanseth all womens priuie places: but women with childe must refrain both drinking and smelling vnto this hearb. And being sod in wine and laid on the palsie members, doth remoue the griefe and pain of them: and the herb brused and laid plaster-wise on the belly (as the second *Plinie* writeth) doth expell or send forth the dead yongling, and prouoketh vrine: and being drunk in wine, it doth mightily quicken such as be molested with the sleeping downeright, so that their heads be often bathed with vineger: And the stomacke mooued often to vomitte, either the powder taken in an egge, or the hearbe drunke in wine doth stay the same. And the hearbe drunk, doth preuaile against the stinges of all venomous beastes.

And *Dioscorides* telleth, that the vse of the Sauery in meates

meates, doth long preſerue the bodie in health. And *Albumacer* alſo writeth, that the propertie of this hearb is, to expel and put away windines, and both the ſwellings and gripings of the body, & helpeth digeſtion. Likewiſe it expelleth the ſuperfluities of the ſtomacke, prouoketh vrine, and the monthly tearmes, and ſharpnes, beſides the weakenes of the ſight proceeded of euill moiſture. Theſe hitherto of the properties of Sauery.

Of the ordering, care, and ſecrets of running Time. Chap. 12

THe running Time of the Garden, deliġhteth to be ſet either in the ſlippes, or ſowen in the ſeeds, vnder the ſhadowe of ſome hedge, or els to be ſet in beddes, on the edge of ſome pond or ditch, or pit of water, for ſo it proſpereth and ſpringeth the faſter, and runneth out at length.

The Phiſicke helpes.

The running Time is both hot and drie in the ſecond degree, & doth ſo much heate, that it both prouoketh the monethly termes, and the vrine, and is alſo very ſharp to taſte. Which running Time doth ſtay the diſtillings of the head proceeding of a cold ſtomacke by drinking therof in wine and alſo doth draw down the termes of women, & prouoketh vrine, & helpeth alſo the biting of venemous beaſts: and it ceaſeth the head-ache, by boyling the hearb in Roſewater, & ſo applying it to the head, and eſpecially the frenzie perſons, and ſuch which be mooued to ſleepe much, by the mixing of vineger to it, and applying the ſame alſo vnto the head: and the drinking of two drams waight of the iuce in vineger, doe ſtay the bloody vomittings. And the drinking of the ſeeds in wine, doth mightilie prouoke the vrine and expell the ſtone: and who that daily drinketh of the hearbe in wine, doth breake the ſtone of the bladder and kidneis. And the hearb healeth the ſting of a Bee, if the ſame be laid vpon it: and being ſodden in wine, with the iuce of ſweet Licoras, doth help both the cough, and purgeth the breaſt: and ſodden in wine with Annis ſeedes, doth heate the ſtomacke, putteth away the wind of the guts, and hel-

peth the strangurie. And this hearbe sodden with vineger and honie, and drinking thereof vnto the quantity of a cup full at a time, dooth helpe the spitting of bloud. And the iuce also mixed with vineger, and drinking therof vnto the quantity of foure drams at a time, doth the like aboue-said: and the same sodden with wine and honie, if the same be applied to hot, in plaster-forme, doth helpe the disease called the Squince: and sodden in wine and drunke, doth open the stoppings of the Liuer and milt, and prouoketh vrine: And the distilling water of the running Time, drunk vnto the quantity of three ounces at a time, both morning and euening, doth strengthen and amend the head, the braine, and the stomack, and prouoketh the appetite vnto meat, putteth away the noise & rumbling of the belly, looseneth the hardnes of the stomacke, and prouoketh vrine: and the water in the same maner drunk, doth comfort the sight consumeth the humors & distillations of the head, and healeth also the one daie ague (or otherwise the Quotidian) mixed with wormwood water, and so drunk.

And the drinking of the same water, vnto the quantitie of three ounces at a time, doth amend and helpe a colde liuer, milt, and the guts vlcerated. And the water doth open the stopping, both of the Nosethrills and ears, restoreth the hearing, helpeth the giddines of the head, stayeth from vomiting, putteth away the gripings of the belly, and bowels: also it breaketh the stone, and prouoketh vrine by the drinking thereof: and to conclude, it healeth bruised members, by applying often linnen clothes dipped in water. These hitherto of the properties of running Time.

Of the ordering, care, and secrets of the Lumbardy Louage. Chap. 13.

THis Hearbe named the Lumbardie Louage, loueth to be sowen in a well digged and dressed ground, but especially neere vnto a thicke hedge or wall, for that it so greatly delighteth, and best prospereth by growing in the shadowe, and nere vnto some running water: and in such sorte sowen, it will come vp in any ground.

The phiſicke helpes.

Louage is hot and drie in the ſecond degree, and the ſeeds may well be kept for three yeares, And now if any drinke the ſeeds faſting in the morning, they after purge that perſon, both vpward and down-ward: and the ſeeds giuen in gliſter, do eaſe that perſon pained with the gout in his feet. And the ſeeds ſteeped for a night in wine, and after drunk, doe ſend downe womens tearmes: and yet note, that theſe ſeeds be ouer ſtrong in working (taken inwardly) in that they breake vlcers, & open impoſtumes, being laid plaiſter wiſe vppon, and doth in a forcible maner expell the dead yongling. And therefore the force of theſe ſeeds in the miniſtring ought to be tempered and mixed with the ſeeds of fenell & Annis, in a like waight of ech to the Louage, for in ſuch ſort taken inward, it neuer harmeth any perſon, & in aplying of the ſeeds, without the body there needeth no other thing to be added to them: and the hearb much profiteth in a bath, if a body be rubbed with them, for ſo it doth open the powers, & draweth forth euil humors in bathing: & the ſeeds ſoddē either in wine or water, & drūk, do open the ſtopping of the liuer and milt: and the ſeeds mixed with comin ſeeds, & bruſed togither, & drunk in wine, doth profit much, for that they amēd the ſtomack, and put away the windines of the belly. And the ſeeds bruſed and ſodden in wine, with Galingale and Sinamon, doth amend and helpe the paines and griefes both of the ſtomack, milt, & bowels. And the Tyzan made of the ſeeds, ſinamon, Rapohtike, & Galingale with ſugar, and the ſame taken in wine, do ceaſe the paine of the belly, put away the ſwelling both of the ſtomacke and bowells, helpeth the biting of ſnakes, & adders and prouoketh vrine, & ſending down of the termes. And a bath made of this hearb and Sage, Roſemary, Mugwoort, Calamint, Camomil, Mellilote, ſticados, & Fenegreeke, and theſe ſodden in wine togither, do help the crampe, proceeding of the fulnes of the body, the palſie, the paine of the gout, & the kings euill: & the diſtilled water drunk, to the quantity of 2. or 3, ounces at a time, helpeth the gripings

of

of the sides and stomacke, the griefe of the stone, kidneis & bladder: amendeth the horcenes of speech, & aswageth the dangerous swelling of the throte, called the Squince. And to conclude, this water maketh the face both faire & cleare if it be daily washed (both morning & euening) ther-with. These hitherto of the properties of Lumbardy Louage.

Of the ordering, and care of the greater or Garden Mallowes, Chap. 14

THe greater, or Garden Mallowes, which beareth flowers from Sommer vnto Winter, as well of the white as red, is like in beautie vnto the rose, although not so strong of sauour, and swete of smell, which the women in our time vse to decke their houses and windowes with. And now these Mallowes, as Collumella writeth, ioyeth to be in a fat ground, and hauing moyst dung lying about it, and that it be remooued, when as foure leaues be well sprung vp. And this hearb the Romans in ancient time vsed to eate in their Sallets and Pottage, in stead of other hearbes. And the floure also of this hearbe (as writeth Columella) doth both open at the full appearance of the Sunne, and shutteth again at the setting of the Sunne. And to conclude, Palladius willeth the seedes of this hearbe to be sowne in the month of Februarie.

The Phisicke helpes.

Garden Mallowes are moist, like to the other kindes of Mallowes, and may very wel be applied, as well to the outward as inward griefes. And the hearb, roote, or seedes either sodden in milke or wine, and drunk, doe cease a hot & dry cough, heale the lungs blistered, and is a singular remedie against the Tisicke. And the Garden mallowes sodden either in wine or water, and mixed with honie and Allome, and the same holden and garguled for a little season in the mouth, doth both heale the blisterings of the mouth and throte, and other stinking sores. And the mallowes sodden and eaten, doth loose the belly: and the same also preuaileth in Agues, vnto such as be then bound in body. And of the same decoction, may be made a glister to loose the bellie.

And

And the distilled water of the Roses or flowers of the great mallows, doth (of experiēce) heale the breakings out of the mouth, and preuaileth against al outward & inward heats, and healeth also the holy fire & blisters of the throte, and all other swellings, if it be gargalled in the mouth and throte, and otherwise applyed without by fine linnen clothes dipped in the same. These hitherto of the properties of the greater Garden mallowes.

Of the ordering, care, and secrets of Fennell. Chap. 15.

FEnnell (after the minde of later writers) ought to be sowen in the beginning of the Spring, which with vs is counted in the end of Februarie, and that in sunny places and somwhat stony. But after the minde of ancient writers, it may be sowen in the month of December, Januarie, and Februarie: and at any time the same may be remooued. And now in our time, the great leaues of Fennell be strewed vnder cakes and bread set in the ouen, to giue a sweeter taste and sauour vnto the crust. Also the green leaues be stuft in Sea-fish, to take away their sea sauour and smell in eating, which the daintie can scarcely abide.

The Phisicke helpes.

Fennel is hot and drie in the second degree: but *Ægineta* writeth, that Fennell doth heat in the third degree, and dryeth in the first, Also the seeds, hearb, rinde and roote, be applyed in medicines: The seeds ought to be gathered in the beginning of September, & may be kept three yeares. Also seeth the Fennel, and when you cannot get the herb vse the seeds, which boyle in faire running or conduit water, after drink a good glasse full of the same euery day, and it taketh away the vnnatural heat, & causeth a cleere sight. And the whole root of the Fennel may be plucked vp in the beginning of May & kept for three yeares. Further if any would put away the red spots of the face, which do present a kinde of leaprie, let him take the Fenel finely brused, & mix the same with old barrowes greace, and beate them a little together, which so done, annoint lightly the face with that

oyntment, which after doth make the face to be seemely againe, and taketh the spots quite away. And the female eaten of women (doth of propertie) increase the milk in their brests. And the seeds eaten, do prouoke vrine, send downe the tearmes, and helpeth the stopping and hardnes of the liuer and milt, and the shedding of vrine. And the iuce of the Fennel mixed with warme milke & the same giuen to drink vnto yong babes or sucking children, helpeth the hardnes of fetching the breath. And both the rinde and the roote of the Fennel sodden in wine and drunk at the going to bed, & in the morning fasting, doth help such as be pained with the disease of the stone, if the same sicknes proceedeth of a hot cause: and the Fennel eaten, doth comfort the stomack, and helpeth digestion: and the like doth the pouder of the seed either eaten or drunk. And the root sodden vntill the same be soft, & laid hot on womens paps beginning to impostumate, dooth heale them. And the iuce pressed into a porrenger, and the same set for fifteene daies in the sunne, which dropped into the eies, doth in short time after cleare and amend the dimnes of the sight. And a litle of the Aloes Hepatick put to this iuce, and the same set in the sunne for fifteene daies, which after drop into the eyes, & it wil greatly amend the sight. And aboue al other waies with the iuce for the sight, this especially is best cõmended, that the iuice be boiled betweene two dishes on a chafing dish with coles, and that the water which standeth like a dew on the vpper dish, be poured still as it riseth into a glasse: and this do so long vntill no more drops appeare in the vpper dish, & after drop of that water into your eies, & it wil greatly amend & cleare the sight. And the iuce of the Fennell tempered with honie and dropped warme into the eares, doth kill the wormes increased and felt in them. And the root with the licour sodden again with wine, and that drunk doth help the paine of the crampe. and healeth the dropsie. And the iuce of the leaues mixed with vineger, and annointed on burning swellings doth asswage them. These hitherto of the properties of Fennell.

Of

Of the ordering, and care, of the Annis.

Chap. 16.

THe Annis doth desire a well digged and fat ground, and commeth verry well vp in other places, by dunging and moisture, and it is sowen in Februarie and March, either alone or with other hearbes.

The phisicke helpes.

The Annis is hot and drie in the third degree, and hath the vertue of consuming and dissoluing: and the seeds also may be kept for foure yeares in much efficacie & strength, if they be hanged vp. And washing your face in the distilled water of this herb, it doth much cleere the same, so that this water be measurably vsed and with discretion, for too often vsing of it doth make the face yellowe. And against the black & blew of a stripe (especially if the same be about the eies) let the seedes with the Cummine be brused togither, wrought with wax, & apply hot to the grieued place: And to the increasing of milk in the brests and of spearme, this pouder of Annis either eaten or drunke, doth greately help: & this onely is caused by opening the passages of the milk & spearme. And in what manner soeuer the seedes be vsed, they assiwage the swellings which both harden the bowells and greeue the stomack. And the eating of the seeds any season togither, doth both heat the liuer and helpeth digestion. And the Annis seeds sodden in wine & mixed with Sinamon and Masticke and that drunk, do mightilie helpe the greeuous belchings proceeded of a colde stomack. And the Annis seedes sod in water and drunke with hartes tung, doth help the stopping both of the liuer and milt, and helpeth all kinde of the dropsie, and stayeth the disease (called the whites) in women.

And the powder of Annis seeds sowed in a linnen bag, and boyled in wine, and after applied hot vnto the womans priuie place doth both cleanse her body, & bringeth downe the tearmes. And the seeds taken with Castorie, do help the swelling of the stomack & bowells. And the seedes brused into powder and tempered with honie, Isope and vineger,

and boyled togither, and then the gargling of the same in the throte, doth help the disease called the squince: and the same prepared with wine, & drūk, do help the impostumes of the stomacke and the cough. And the Annis seeds either eaten or drunk with vineger and honie, do help the strangling or stopping of the matrice. These hitherto of the properties of the Annis seedes.

Of the ordring, care, and secrets of Commine. Chap. 17.

THe Commine delighteth to be sowen in a fat and well dressed ground, and under a warme aire, either in March or in the middle of the spring the seedes ought to be sowen. And they do best prosper being sowen among other hearbs.

Some ancient Authors write, that seedes prosper the better and grow the plentifullier, if they be sowen with cursed wordes, but I commend not this manner in sowing.

The Phisicke helpes.

Commine is hot and dry in the third degree, as *Ægineta* writeth, and the seeds also may be kept for fiue yeares, and vsed in meates, drinks, and sauces, for that they comfort & help digestion. And the wine of the decoction of Commin seeds, drie Figs, and of Fennel seeds vsed togither, do mittigate the paine and gripings of the greate guts, comming of windines. And the same wine also like ordred, doth preuail against the cough comming of cold. And against the swelling of the cheekes, take Commine seeds and Figs well brused togither, & after seeth them in wine, which lay plaister wise on the greeued place, and it doth help the same. And against the colde rewme of the head, take powder of Commine seeds and Bay berries, which heate togither in an earthen potte, and putting the same after into a little linnen bagge, apply warme on the head, and this without doubt helpeth that griefe. And against the black and blewe of a stripe, or any other maner, done whiles the same is yet fresh and new, you must take the fine powder of the Commine seedes, and wax, and worke the same togither at the fier,

and

and often apply that plaiſter warme vnto the greeued place, which ſo vſed, is thought a ſure and perfect remedie. And the Cummine ſeeds, ſodden in wine with Fenegreeke, do take away ſwellings, and the griping paine of the guts. And the ſeeds bruſed & tempered with the white of an egg and that laid on the eye, doth take away the rednes of the ſame. And the Cummin ſeedes boyled in wine, and laid hot on the Nauell, doth eaſe the ſtrangurie, and all other paſſions of the bladder. And the Cummin ſeeds ſodden in water (if the face be waſhed with the ſame) do cauſe the face to be clearer and fairer, ſo that the ſame be now & then vſed: for the often & much vſing of it, doth make the face pale. And the Cummine ſeedes bruiſed and boyled with vineger, and applyed warme to the noſethrils, doth ſtay the much bleeding at the noſe, and womens ſucceſſe of the Reddes. Theſe hitherto of the properties of the Cummine ſeede.

Of the ordering, care, and ſecrets of the Coliander.
Chap. 18.

COliander ioyeth to be ſowen in a fat ground, although it will well inough proſper in a leane ground: and the ſeedes, the elder they ſhall be (ſo that they be not vtterly decayed with age) the ſooner and better they will proſper and come vp, and they muſt be often watered. And Palladius writeth, that the ſeedes may be ſowen from the middle of March to October.

The Phiſicke helpes.

The hearbe Coliander is ſufficient common, and hath the vertue of cooling, as writeth *Diſcorides*, although other write (as *Vigonius*) that the Coliander is colde and dry, and others to be hot and dry. For by the effect it is knowen to be hot, in that it doth reſerue windines and wens: and on the other ſide againe, the ſeeds ſhew it to be cold and dry, in that (after meat) eaten, they ſtay the vapours ryſing vp that they aſcend not vnto the head. And the ſeeds in receits may well be vſed & kept for two yeares. And the ſeeds haue the vertue of helping digeſtion & the paines of the ſtomacke with windines, if they be miniſtred in meat. And the wine

of the decoction of Coliander drunke, doth the like: also the pouder of the seeds cast on meats, do cause them digest the better.

And *Isiodorus* writeth, that the pouder of the seedes ministred in sweet wine, do cause men to be the proner to the veneriall act, yet the same too much vsed, is euill: for that it bringeth men vnto a frēzines, and raging with themselues: and the much eating of the hearb and seeds togither, is venemous to dogs, and killeth them: and further: the confects made of the Coliander seeds with sugar, do not only strengthen the stomack by vsing them, but represse the vapours ascending to the head, and therfore, the rather to be vsed in meats of those which be molested with the falling sickenes: For the cause of this sickenes, doth proceed of the vapours which rise from the stomacke vnto the head. And the seeds may not be eaten raw, but rather steeped in vineger, or couered ouer with suger: for that being either steeped in vineger, or couered with suger, before the eating, doth stay the humors rising from the stomack vnto the head. And he Coliander seeds prepared with vineger, & brused, and after taken with the iuce of Plantine, staieth the great bleeding of the nose. And *Xenocratus* writeth a marueilous matter (if the same be true,) that if a woman eat but one grain of the seeds, that then her courses, shall runne for one day: if two graines, then two daies togither, if three graines, then three daies togither: and thus, looke how many graines, & so many daies following they shall continue. But this hearbe is forbidden to be taken in ward, for that it harmeth the head and bloud. And the iuce of Coliander mixed with vineger, doth both coole and help the holy fire: and the seedes a little brused and giuen in raisons to eat, doth slea the wormes in children. And the iuce of the hearbe, with the iuce of Lettuce, of Plantine, the white of an Egg, and oyle of Roses, all these laboured well togither, and after laid on hot impostumes, and burning swellings, or blisters, doe both asswage and heale them. These hitherto of the Coliander.

Of

Of the ordring, and care of Mustard seeds. Chap. 19

Mustard seedes loy to be sowen in a tilled and well laboured ground, and rather on the ridge of furrowes although they will spring in any ground, and be nourished in fine earth like to pouder dust. And the seeds must be raked ouer, whereby they may be couered in the ground, for that they loy in the natural moysture continuing in the earth: and the seedes which you prepare to be eaten (in transposing the plants) they will be stronger. Also the seeds sowen before and after winter, do desire a fat ground, and to be thin sowen, for so they come vp better then being thicke sowen: and after the plants be well sprung vp, they may be remoued and set againe.

The phisicke helpes.

Mustard seeds be hot and dry in the fourth degree, & the seeds onely to be kept for fiue yeres: and the seeds haue the vertue of dissoluing, attracting, & extenuating. And against the palsie of the tongue, the seeds only chewed and holden vnder the tongue, do help the same. And against the palsie in other members, let the seeds be put into a litle bag, and sodde in wine, laid on the grieued place, but especialy in the beginning of the sikes. And the pouder of the seeds drawn vp by the nose, doth prouok sneezing, & purgeth the brain of superfluities. And also *Plinie* writeth, that the seedes doe extenuate and deminish the clammy and grose humours & doe heale the stings of Sepents and Scorpions, being ministred with vineger. And the seeds do marueylously purge, breake the stone, cause an appetite, & comfort the stomack. And the seeds brused with Enula Campana, and that laid on ripe impostumes, do both breake and draw them without paine. And the seeds garguled with water and honny, doth help the blistering of the mouth and the Squince. And the seeds eaten with figs and Cummine mixed togither, doth helpe the dropsie. And a like quantity of Mustard seedes, Pelitory and Ginger, mixed togither with rosed honnie, and also washing the mouth there-with, and holding the same a good while in the mouth, dooth purge the braine

of

of such euil humours, which especially causeth greeuous aking and paine of the head: and the selfe same doth help the falling of the roofe of the mouth, & the vlcers in the throte: and to haue a clere voice to sing, take the meale of mustard seeds, and worke the same with honie into little balls, of the which swallow one down euery morning, and it shal cause you to haue a cleare voice in short time. And the chawing of the Mustard seeds in the mouth, doth drawe downe and purge the flegme of the head. These hitherto of the mustard seeds.

Of the ordering, and care, both of the Cheruill and Caper. Chap. 20.

CHeruill desireth to be sowen in a fertile, moystie, and well dunged ground, And to be sowen in the moneth of August, for so it serueth very well all the winter thorowe. And the Capers ioy in a barren and leane ground, and flourish, and beare their floure in the Sommer, and annoy al other herbes growing neere them. And they also wither and dye away, at the setting and going out of sight of the seauen starres.

Of the ordering and care of the hearb Dill. Chap. 21.

THe hearb Dill, desireth the common earth of the garden, and to be sowen in the moneth of February or March, and in the months also of September, or October, And in a gentle and wholsome place: it may be sowen in the month of December, either by it selfe, or among other hearbes, and wel beareth or suffereth all conditions of weather: but it most ioyeth in the warme weather, and to be thin sowen and watered, if they be not otherwise dewed and moistned with showers. And some couer not the seeds with earth after the sowing, supposing that the birds will not eate vp the seedes, lying so bare.

The Phisicke helpes.

Dill is hot and drie in the second degree, and the seedes may be kept for three yeres, although they be the better, if yearly they be renued, & the seeds also be chiefly occupied,

ed in the medicine. And now the decoction of the hearb & seeds do preuaile & help the straightnes of pissing, and increaseth milk in the brests. And against the pain of the matrice, take a handfull of Dill boyling the same in wine, and after applying it in plaister forme vnto the grieued place, it doth help the same. But *Auicen* writeth, that the much and often eating of Dill, doth weaken & make dim the sight: & yet if any vseth the hearb, it procureth sleep, & the rather if the head be annointed with the oyle of Dill. And the ancient Phisitians write, but especially *Galen*, that garlands made of the greene hearb & worne on the head, procure sleepe: and the iuce or oile of Dill dropped warme into the eares, doth help the pain of them. And the Dill sodden with Poppy seedes, and drunk, doth stay vomiting, and the gripings & wind of the belly. And the ashes of Dill doth help all the diseases of the fundament, and paine of the priuities: and it may profitably be annointed on moist vlcers, and especially, those (as *Galen* writeth) which are often in the priuities. And the decoction of the Dill in wine, being drunke, doth help such as are pained with the strangury. And the Dil sodden with suger & mixed with oyle and wine, and after drunk, doth help the matrice, send downe the after burden, and draw down the termes, taking to the quantity of two drammes at a time. And take the seeds of Dill & Nettle, a like quãtity, those beare into fine pouder, which mix with water and hony, and after lay that plaster-wise on the piles of the fundament, & it will heale them in short time. These hithertoof the hearb Dill.

Of the ordring, care, and secrets of Rue. Chap. 22.

RVe or hearbgrace, desireth to be sowen in a sunny place and drye, in the moneth of March, and that the earth be mixt with ashes. And this hearb loueth to be sowen on high beds, wherby the proper moysture may shed therfro as Palladius writeth. And the bare seeds also without huskes, may be strewed on beds, and couered ouer with fine drye earth with a rake. And the yong plantes springing out of the seedes,

being in the huskes be the stonger, although they be longer in the appearing aboue the earth. And the yong plantes hate both moisture and dung, and rather ioyeth in the dung of ashes, and it cannot well abide the cold of winter, and therfore desireth to be couered on the beds with ashes, whereby the same may the better defend them from the sharpenes of the colde through the heate therof. And if they be sprinckled with water, then do they sacker spring vp, as writeth Theophrastus: yet may not the plantes be moued with any yron, for feare of hindring their growth. And when the yong plantes be somwhat come vp, then weede them dilligently, whereby the weeds hinder not their growth. You must not onely sowe the seeds, but set the slippes, being slipped off from the greater stalkes neare to the rootes in the spring time, and in the month of August, and that the slippes be writhed at the ends for so they speedily take roote in the earth. And the whole plant remoued and set againe, doth seldome prosper, but dyeth soone after the new setting, which the slippes broken off from the stalkes contrary do. And they prosper many yeares without withering any thing, so that a woman (hauing then her tearmes) come not nigh nor handle the hearbe, for that by handling, the hearb doth by little and little wither and drye away, as writeth Collumella.

And some write, that Rue set within the Beane, bored through, and couered with earth, doth in the growing take away the strong smell of the hearbe.

And both Plinie and Palladius write, that the Rue more ioyeth and plentifullyer groweth, by being set vnder the shadowe of the fig tree. And of this, Theophrastus iudgeth that to be the best hearb grace, which being planted through the fig tree barke, is so couered with earth.

And the weeding also of this hearb with bare hands whilest the deawe hangeth on the leaues, doth cause dangerous blisters and sores.

And therefore if any by ignorance doth weede about the plantes without gloues on their handes, and that the handes be after infected both with an Itch and swelling or blisters, then

then let the perſon annoint his hands with fallet oyle, or for lacke of oyle, with the iuce of Hemlocke, and it will heale them in ſhort time.

And the iuce of the hearbgrace ſprinckled on Hens, Cocks, chickens or any other poultrie ſitting on the roofte, or ſprinkled in the poultry houſe, doth driue away Weaſelles by the ſtrong ſmell of the hearb, for it is a ſpeciall defence againſt ſuch kinde of vermine. And to driue away either gnats or flyes out of your chamber, take a greene branch of the hearb grace (as Democritus writeth) and with the ſame ſprinckle water round about your chamber. And thus much for the ordring the hearbgrace.

The Phiſicke helpes.

Hearbgrace is hot and dry in the third degree, & both the leaues and ſeedes may well be vſed in medicine. And the ſeedes alſo ought to be gathered in harueſt, which may wel be kept for fiue yeares, and the leaues dryed, for al poyſons, & a peculiar Triacle for the poore, which not only the King *Methridates* witneſſeth, but very experience, doth daily teach the ſame: yea, both curious painters, and fine grauers do often eat of this hearb with their meates, for the cleering and amending of the ſight. And Rue eaten doth put away winde and dulleth the deſire to the veneriall act. And the leaues eaten with dry figs and walnuts togither, is the ſureſt remedie that may be againſt any deadly poyſon, if the ſame be taken in time.

And to make another preſeruatiue of the ſame, ſomwhat more coſtly, is on this wiſe: Take an ounce of the leaues of Rue, halfe an ounce of figs, halfe an ounce of Iuniper berries, two ounces of walnuts, and four ounces of vineger: all theſe mix and labour togither, of the which, ſwallowe downe a little faſting in the morning when you riſe, and you ſhal be defended all that day from being poyſoned. And it is alſo a ſinguler & precious Triacle againſt a peſtilēt aire: and the herbgrace ſodden in vineger and drunk putteth away belching. And the herb ſodden in wine with figs, vntil the halfe be conſumed, and after drunke, dooth mightily helpe

the dropsie, the paines also of the brests, sides, and loynes: yea, the same drunk, doth help the cough, the diseases of the liuer, the lungs and the kidneis, so that there hang no ague on the patient: and the hearb sodden with oyle, and after cast vp in glister form, doth put away the paines of the womans places, and the swellings of the great gutte. And the hearb brused with oyle, & laid-plaister-wise on all the priuie place vnto the fundament, dooth help the strangling of the priuitie. And the hearb sodden with Isop and Annis in wine, doth put away gripings, eyther drunk or fomented on the greeued place. And a plaister made of the hearb with oil and laid on the nauell, dooth kill the wormes of the bellye. And the eating of the hearb grace doth amend & put away the smel of onyons & garlick: and the hearb grace helpeth those diseased with the ague, if the same be sodden in oil oliue, & before the fit come, the body be annointed with the same, or els the same put (before the fit) in glister wise. And the hearb sodden in oile & dropped hot into the eares, doth expell the wormes. And the hearb sodden with mirre, and drunk, doth put away the water betweene the skin and the flesh. And the iuce of Rue mixed with the oile of roses and vineger, and annointing the head therwith, doth put away the beating paine therof. And the hearb sodden in Famitory water, and drunk, doth help children diseased with small pockes. If children hauing the measels, be not already blinded with them, then hang both the roote of Rue and Scabious about the childrens neckes, and they shalbe defended therby by Gods permission. And an ointment made of the hearb with oile of Roses, Ceruse & vineger, doth heale any scabbe, the holy fire, running sores, and hot blisters. And the hearb with Garlike, salte and walnuts mixed together, and layed plaister-wise on the bite of a mad Dogge or Adder, it doth heale the same: And against the weaknes of sight, proceeded of a cholerick tumositie, drink therof the wine wherin this hearb hath bene laid to soake in the vessel, for a while before: Also the hearb mixed with Rose-water & laid on bleared eies, do marueilously clēse & heale them.

And

And against the tooth-ach, take the hearbe sodden in wine, and lay that plaster-wise on the grieued place. Or this wise, take the stalke of the same hearbe, and burne the same somwhat in the fire, and with that burne the hollownesse within the tooth. And against the coldnes of the stomacke, and palsie of the other members, drink the decoctiō of this herb with Castorie: and against the stopping of the liuer & milt, and straightnes of making water, drink the hearb with the root of Fenel sodden in wine togither, or the pouder of the root of the Fenell, with the iuce of the hearbe. And against the straightnes of making of water, and bloudie flixe, seeth the hearb in wine and oile, and lay it plaister-wise on the root of the priuity. And young maried wiues may seldome eat of this herb, for feare of hindring cōception at any time. And the person annointed with the iuce of this hearbe, or bearing the hearb about him, shall not be bitten or stinged of any venemous worme or beaste. And last, the Rue of propertie doth driue away all venemous beasts & wormes out of that ground which is set about with that hearb: and this beeing planted in Gardens neere to the beddes of Sage, the Toad will not come neere the same, vnder which (as some write) they delight to be. These hitherto of the properties of the Hearbe Grace.

Of the ordering, and care, of the hearb Isope.

Chap. 23.

Isope is a fruitefull plant, and necessarie in the Garden, which ought to be sowne or set in slippes or whole plants, neither in fat nor dunged ground, but in an open and sunnie place: and after the hearbe is well sprung vp, then may it indure the frostes and Snow in Winter. And Palladius willeth the Isope to be set in whole plants in the moneth of Februarie. And in the Summer, when the hearbe beareth his floure, then cut off the same, and drie it in the shadow.

The Phisicke helpes.

The Isope of qualitie is hot and drie in the second degree: yet Galen affirmeth, that Isope is hot & drie in the third degree.

gree, but the same is of the thin parts. And when the same is to be vsed in medicine, then ought the leaues to be stripped from the stalkes, and the stalkes cast away as vnprofitable, but the leaues may well be kept for a yeare.

And now the Isope sodden in spring water, with figs, honey, and Rue, and after drunk, doth helpe those diseased in the Lungs, fetching their breath short, an olde cough proceeding through the distillings from the head, vnto the lower parts, and in the fetching of breath (none otherwise) then by reaching the neck vpright, and slayeth all maner of wormes in the belly. And the iuce of the hearbe drunke with Oximell, doth loose a costiue belly: and the same iuce taken with the seeds of Cresses, doth gently loose the belly, and causeth a cleare face, and good colour of the skin, if any drinketh thereof.

And the hearb boyled with pure duckes grease, and figs, and that laid in plaister forme on the milt, doth take away the swelling therof.

And against the hardnes or swelling of the milt, and the water betweene the skinne, boyle the hearb with figs and Salt Niter, and lay that plaister-wise on the grieued places. And the hearb sodden in wine, and drunk, doth cleanse the breast: and sodden in water, doth swage the swelling of the gummes, by washing the mouth therewith. And the hearb sodden in wine with fenell seeds, being drunk, doth take away both paine of the stomacke, and bowelles: and a foment also made with the hearb sodden & applied vnto the stomacke, doth the like effect: and the same foment applied beneath, dooth purge and clense womens places of the superfluous humours. And for the disease of the Squince, the hearb sodden with figs, & that garguled in the throte, doth greatly help: and the hearb sodden in vineger, with the which, wash the gummes of the teeth, and it will cease the ach and paine of them. And of the Isope made a wine, named Isope wine, doth help by drinking thereof, the diseases of the breast, th[illegible]des, & the lungs, the shortnes of winde, and an old cough: [illegible] the same prouoketh vrine, & helpeth the gripings

gripings & nippings of the body, and ceaseth the cold shaking of a daily Ague, and draweth downe the termes. These hitherto of the properties of Isope.

Of the ordering and care of the Mints. Chap. 24

MInts may be planted neere vnto a well, or other running water, for that the hearbe delighteth in a moyst place, and to be set either in slips, or in the whole rootes, and flourisheth in the Sommer, but withereth in the Winter. And this hearb ought to be set in a sunny place, but in no verie fat ground, nor dunged: and this hearbe may not be mooued after the growing with any Iron, as we haue afore taught. And this hearb once sowen and prouing, doth continue many yeares after in the Garden. And Plinie writeth, that the Mints ought to be set in the beginning of the month of March.

The Phisicke helpes.

Mints in the Garden are hot and dry in the second degree, and all the sorts of mints in the garden, do both comfort the stomacke, and help digestion. And now the mints brought to pouder and eaten in milke, dooth slea the wormes of the belly: and the hearb eaten, doth loose the belly: and the daily vsing of this hearb, doth giue a good colour: and at any time eatē, is very healthful to the body. And the iuce of the hearb mixed with a little Brimstone and vineger, and that ānointed on the holy fier with a feather, doth cease the pain forthwith. And mints sodden with wine & drunk, doth ease the pain of the kidnies, and bowels: and sodden in wine and oile, & that laid plaister-wise on impostumes, doth dissolue & cure them. And against the stinking sauour of the mouth and rottennes of the gums and teeth, let then the mouth & gums, be washed with vineger, of the decoction of garden mints, & after rubed with the pouder of dry mints, or with dry mints. And against the brest hardned by the curding of the milk, take a great handful of the mints, & the same seeth in wine and oile, & after lay that plaster-wise on the paps & it helpeth them. And further note, that when any medicine is giuen against poyso, the same ought to be ministred with the

the iuce of Mints, or with wine of the decoction of it, if you cannot get (at that time) the iuce, or the onely iuice of Mints, or wine of the decoction of it, or the iuice of it with honie commixed together, doth helpe the fame. Also the fame helpeth the stopping of the Liuer and Milt, and the waies of the vrine proceeding of a cold humour, and of the hot without an Ague. And the iuce ministred with honie, doth slea the worms in the belly, & it doth also kil worms, dropped into the eares. And the mints put into milke, will not suffer the milke to curd, although the runnet be put into it: and in the like sort, it doth hinder generation. These hitherto of the properties of garden mints.

Of the ordering, and care of the Garden Time.

Chap. 25.

THe Garden Time is a plant right profitable, which delighteth rather to be set in the whole plants, then sowen in the seeds, in a leane and stony ground, and that open in the Sun, but neither in fat nor dunged ground. And Theophrastus writeth, that it will well enough prosper, if the Planets be set with the flowers growing on them. And Palladius writeth, that the best time for the setting of it, is in the latter end of the moneth of September, in a sunnie place, and stony ground.

The phisicke helpes.

The Garden Time is hot and drie in the third degree, and doth prouoke vrine, and the termes in women, and purgeth also the bowells, by drinking thereof in wine. This Time sodden with honie and drunk, doth helpe such as fetch the winde short, and helpeth in a maner all other griefes of the breast, by spitting forth the corrupt matter. And four drams of the fine pouder of Time, taken with six spoonefull of Oximell, doth purge choller, and cleanse the bladder.

And if the belly swelleth, then take one dram of the fine pouder of this Garde Time, with a spoonfull of mellicrate, which drunk fasting, doe ease the paine of the boweles and loynes. And to take away the wind of the breast, the sides, and

and flanckes, drink the quantity of three drams of the pouder, with a ſpoonfull of Oximel mixed together: alſo three drams of this pouder mixed with a ſpoonful of oximel doth purge the melancholly, and dulnes of the ſences proceeding of melancholly: & the ſame potion alſo giueth the clearenes of ſight, and helpeth the paines of the eyes, if it be taken faſting: alſo the pouder helpeth ſuch, grieuouſly pained with the gout, being giuen with wine: and this Time muſt bee moderatly vſed, for the much eating of it doth greatly heat, and yet beware of the black Time, for that the ſame dooth corrupt and ingender choller: but vſe that only which beareth a purple flower, hauing ſome whiteneſſe withall. Thus much of the Garden Time.

Of the ordering and care, of the hearb Organie. Chap. 26.

ORganie delighteth to be ſet in rough & ſtony places, and to be dunged and watered till the ſame be well faſtned in the earth. And it alſo delighteth in the ſame order of dreſſing as doth the parcely.

And Palladius willeth that Organie be ſet in September about the time of the Suns entring into Libra. And it ought then to be gathered when it beareth floures, and to bee dryed in the ſhadowe, for ſo the leaues and floures will continue for a yere, if they be before ſtripped from the ſtalks, and the ſtalks caſt away.

The Phiſick helps.

Organie of the garden is hot and drie in the third degre, and the kindes of Organy haue the vertue of cutting a ſunder, drying, drawing, and alſo conſuming: but the root of any of them haue no vertue in medicine. This Organie helpeth any perſon that is diſeaſed in the liuer, by drinking the decoction of the floures, and the floures and leaues put into a little linnen bag, and the ſame boyled in wine, & aplyed hot to the head (the pacient then couered with clothes to ſweate) doth driue forth and put away many griefes of the head and breſt, and helpeth alſo the ſtreightnes of fetching breath. And the Organie ſod in wine, & drunk, doth help the ſtomacke, and eaſe the bowels. And the ſame decoction

laide on the belly, doth prouoke vrine, and being drunke warme, doth ease the grieuous paine in making of water, & the dropping of the Vrine, and to helpe the disease of going often to the stoole and dooing nothing, take the pouder of Organy, and strew or sprinckle that on the fundament, and it will shortly after loose the belly & bring forth the ordure. And the hearb it selfe sodden in wine oliue, and the same striked on a linnen cloth, & applied after to the womās priuy place, doth take away the hardnes therof, and purgeth it, and draweth downe the tearmes: and to heale the red leapry take the iuice or Organy, the iuce of horhound, a little wine and the like of the oyle of Henbane, yet more of them then of the iuce, putting to them also a little oyle of tartar, which so don, mix altogether, anointing the partie in an hot house before his cōming forth: & if that after his comming forth he be greeued with pain, let him take Goates grease melted in a frying pan, with the which annointe the places againe, and afeer lye downe in a cleane paire of sheetes, lying there so long vntill the same be dryed in, and after take and bruse the Organy, mixing the same with wheaten bran, and heat that in a frying pan, and this being so hot as may be suffered lay vpon the blisters and leaprie, & binding a cloth vpon it, let it so lye vntill the same neede heating againe: and this doe so often, vntill the patient be healed, which the same wil do without doubt, and in the meane while let the patient eat such things as do ingender good blood, & be of an easie digestion, and dayly to drinke the sirop of Fumitorie: and if the same happen in the winter, then to drinke the sirrope of Egrimony in such sort.

And further, the iuce of Organye with womans milke dropped warme into the eares, doth ease the paine of them, and the hearb bruised with Roses, Calamus Aromanticus, and wormewood, and this applyed hot, doth send vp again the fundament into the proper place. These hitherto of the properties of the Organy.

Of

Of the ordering, care, and ſecrets of Violets. Chap. 27.

VIolets (after the minde of Columella) ought to bee planted in Beds a foote high, and the earth well laboured and turned in with dung, and that the Plants bee not aboue a yeare olde, and to bee ſet in ſhort furrowes a foote broad, in the beginning of the Spring or in the entrance of the moneth of March. And the ſeeds may be ſowen in beds twice a yere, firſt in the Spring time and after in the harueſt, but the later ſowing proſpereth the worſe with vs, through the colde ſeaſon following: which Violets ought in like ſort to be weeded, and the olde withered leaues cut away and watered (when neede ſo requireth) as you doe other Pot-herbes in the coming vp. And to haue one plant bring forth ſundrie colours together, take the leaues of all the colours of Violets, and put them together into a thin woone linnen cloath, and after ſet them in a well dunged and laboured ground, as before was taught. And this note, which by experience hath bene found true, that vnleſſe the faireſt Violet be remooued, it will beare both a ſmaller flower, and a leſſer of ſmell, then it did in the yeare before.

The Phiſicke helps.

Violets be colde in the end of the ſecond degree. The violets ought eſpecially to be gathered in March, and dryed in a ſhadowye place of the aire, & there be alſo three kindes of them which are vſed in medicine, as the white, the blacke and yellow: and the floures drunke, do take away the windines of the ſtomacke: and the decoction of the floures gargaled in the throat, doth help the diſeaſe called theſquince.

And the iuice of this hearbe doth put away any ſwelling proceeding of a hot cauſe, and two drams of the powder of the ſeedes drunken in wine, dooth draw downe the tearmes of women, and the roote ſodden in wine, and laide vpon the ſwollen Milt, doth put away the ſwelling, and dryeth vp the humour.

And the roote ſod in wine, and laide plaiſter-wiſe on the

hot gout, doth ease the paine. And white Vyolets boyled, and laide in plaister forme vnto the belly of a woman, doth send forth the dead yongling, and put away the swellings of the priuie place: and if a foment of them be applyed to the nether part vpward, it doth mundifie the priuy place, and draw downe the tearmes: and the Vyolets applyed, dooth ease the paine of the head (proceeding of an vntemperate hotnes) causeth sleep, soften & mak easie the brest & throat, help the pallat of the mouth fallen, & the squince: but the sirop of the Vyolets do especially worke these aboue saide: and the only smell of the floures, take away the head-ache: and the roots boyled with Vineger and drunk, & the same annoynted on the spleene, doth asswage the swelling, & easeth likewise the gout: and the hearb with the root boyled & applyed to Children, doth help their cough: and the oyle of vyolets doth heal many diseases: as first, dropped into the eares, doth put away the greefs of them, & taketh away the head-ache by annointing the head therwith. And the same oyle mixed with worme-seedes, and annointing the bellye therewith, doth expell and send foorth the wormes. And the sirop of the Vyolets doth help the burning of the ague, loose the bellye, and quallifieth a hot Liuer: and the purple Violets drunk in water, do loose the belly, qualifie choller, help inflamations, cease thirst, and put away the iaundise: and the same doth the conserue of Violets. These hitherto of the violets.

Of the ordering, care, and secrets of all Roses.
Chap. 28

FOr that Roses bee pleasant ornaments in a garden, and so necessarie (all the kindes) in medicine, wee minde heere largely to write of the sowing and setting of all the kindes.

For all kindes of Roses may not bee set either in fat and clayie ground, nor moist or wet earth, but in a fine earth dunged with store of drie rubbish, and in short slips of a foote long, and in verie short furrowes. For to bee sowen in the seedes, they come slowly vp.

And heere note, that you may not thinke those to bee the seedes

ſeedes of the Roſe, which grow in the middle of the floure, in colour like vnto gold, but that the ſeeds be in that part which reſembleth the forme of a ſmall Peare in the vpper end of the ſtalke, on which the leaues of the floure ſticke. And now the ſeedes are then ripe to bee gathered, when as the grapes with vs bee full ripe, which ripeneſſe of them is well knowen both by their fulſith and browniſh colour, and by their ſoftneſſe in the feeling. And note further, that the beds of Roſes, muſt be high caſt vp, which you ought eſpecially to doe in the moneth of March, hauing your ground then in a readineſſe, and the day faire. And ordering your Beds after this manner yearely, they will continue many yeres: and when they war olde, then dig vp the earth about them, and prune them by cutting from them all the withered ſtalkes and dead branches, and repairing the emptie places with new ſlippes, after the minde of Palladius. And ſome wil, that the olde Plants with the rootes being digged vp, and cut a ſpanne long, to be new ſet againe. And other wil, that the young ſprings with their rootes bee ſet a foote aſunder each from the other, well dunged & often watered. And if you haue not ſufficient plants to ſet out your Beds, then betweene the olde plants ſet young ſprings, ſlipped off from the old, and the olde ſet againe with the rootes and al, and that a foot aſunder each from the other, wel dunged and often watered, for ſo they grow the plentifuller and fatter. And at the end of euerie yeare, new ſet them againe, and prune and cut away the ſuperfluous branches at the ſetting of each roote, and digge alſo freſh earth often about them, for in that they ioy. And the Roſes will ſmell the ſweeter, if they bee gathered in faire and drie daies: and to haue your Roſes ſoner then any other, and pleaſanter of ſmel, make little gutters too hand breadth from the rots, and poure warme water morning and euening into the gutters, which ſo through the heate both greatly comfort the Plantes, and maketh them grow the fatter.

Alſo Didimus writeth, that if you ſet Garlike heads heere and there among your Roſes, they will ſmell farre pleaſanter thorowe the continuall heate ſent from them. And here note,

that the maner of the watering aboue-said, ought not to bee done before the cups or verie young buds appeare, and then dayly after, to water vnto the gathering.

And to haue Roses euerie moneth, you must then (as Didimus writeth) new plant, dung and water them often euery moneth. But to haue Roses monethly cannot be possible, neither in our countrie of England, nor in any other Countrie, lying vnder the North, so well as in the temperate and warm countries. And this note, that those Roses which grow in a drie ground, bee farre sweeter then those growing in a wet ground.

And to haue timely Roses, sift then your earth through a Siue, and that earth mixe with dung, and put the same into an earthen pot, which after moisten a little, setting the same abroad in sunnie and warme daies, or letting small and fine raine fall vppon it, and at the setting of the Sunne take in the pot alwaies: and this so long do (and watering it the whiles) vntill the winter and colde weather be past. And after this, when a faire day commeth, then set the pot in the earth, couering it ouer and about the plants with fresh earth and doe afterward (as aboue is taught) and you shal so haue timely Roses.

And to keepe Roses all the yeare, doe as Didimus teacheth: take greene Barley, being yet as grasse, (and not eared) with the rootes, and all those put into an earthen pot, not glased, or rather vnmealed: into which, put your buds nothing opened, and diligently couer them about with this greene barly, and you shall keepe them fresh and greene so long as you list (couering the mouth of the pot close) euen as though they grew still in beds on their stalkes. And others, strew the green Barley on pauemēt or hard floor, and in the blades they bury or hide the buds. Also other take yong Buds, a little opened at the setting of the Sunne, and in no wise touching them with hands, but properly gather them with a sharpe knife, & those lay on a drie boord, letting them be abroad all the night through if the night be faire: after, haue in a readinesse your earthen pot, well glazed both within and without: but some thinke

it better, if not nealed at all, but whether way you like best, (that vse) and put therein your Roses before the Sunne be vp in the morning, and stop close your pot with clay, mired with horse dung and flockes, that no aire breathe out at the mouth of the pot, which so done: then set the pot into a bedde of drie sand, and couering it well ouer with the same dry sand, letting no moist place be neere to, or about the same. And on this wise, and by that other meanes afore taught, you may haue fresh Roses all the yeare through.

And here note, that Roses and other flowers, dryed either in the Sunne or Ouen, doe longer and better retaine their strength, sauor, and colour, then being dryed in the shadowe, so that the same be done with discretion. And the like may bee thought to be done with the sweete and smelling Roses.

And as touching that way of making the white Roses to be red, and the red Roses to bee white, and so partie colours, with other pretty conclusions besides of the rose, you shal further read and vnderstād in my little treatise, intituled Naturall and Artificiall conclusions, where I largely write of these and many other right pleasant conclusions to bee read vnderstood of the common sort.

The Phisicke helpes.

The Rose is colde and drie in the second degree. Now, when the red Roses be not fully opened, they must be clipped off, and dryed in the Sunne. The rosed hony eaten, doth profit much, for that the same doth both comfort the bloud and stomacke, and the iuce of the Roses sodden in wine, doth take away the paine of the head, and helpeth the eyes: and the gummes washed with the same, doth put away the paine of them: and the leaues of the roses bruised, and laide on inflamations, doth draw forth the heat. The seeds of roses beaten to pouder, doth ease the paine of the teeth, by rubbing the gums and teeth with the same pouder, and the heads (in which the seedes be sodden and drunke) do loose the belly, & help the spitting of bloud. Roses mixed with hony & sugar, & that eatē, do dry vp euil humors of the stomack: & the leaues

leaues of the Roses soden in wine, and giuen to drink, doth helpe such griefes, as commonly happen in womens priuie places: and the fresh or new Rose leaues, mixed together with hony, doe aptly purge mans body, and to make an especiall Laxatiue, take two ounces of the iuyce of Roses, & mixe the same with Whay made of cowes milk, & a little spicknard: & you may also take the whay of milk, putting therto twelue ounces of rose leaues, and a little honnie, and this doth marueilous well loose and purge the belly. And sirope of roses onely (being made of fresh roses) dooth purge the belley: and rose leaues wrought together with hony & suger, do both comfort and purge the body: and that Vinegar is right profitable, in which the roses be infused or steeped for a night, to annoint or strike on hot members, or places of the body. & to a hot stomacke the same applyed outward, doth greatly help & qualifie the hot burning therin: and the iuice of roses, drunk with sweet conduit water, doth both lose the body, purgeth the blood, and especially choller, and putteth away the Kings euill: and the iuice of roses onely taken, doth put away a great burning without danger, and bringeth a man (after the purging of his body) vnto a quiet rest: and the Roses doe comfort the heart, and reioyce the blood: and the rosed hony dooth both comfort and expell the melancholly and flegmatike matter: and giuen in that water, in which Fennel seedes is sodden, doth purge the better, if the same shall be mixed with a little salt.

The best making of the oyle of Roses is on this wise, first clip off the rose leaues from the whites, & boiling the same in oyle Oliue, then sun the same in a glasse for fiftie daies: & this is the best approued oyle. And this oile applyed to a hot liuer, doth greatly helpe: and annointed about the temples doth take away the aking or beating paines of the head, and cooleth it. The rose leaues vsed in meats, doth asswage both the heat of the stomacke and liuer, and the pouder of rose leaues bruised with vineger, & mixed with the white of an Eg, doth effectually heale the paine of the eyes, restraineth the humours, and the sheading of blood into the vaines of

the

the eyes, if the ſame be applied plaiſter-wiſe on the temples. And that which is called ſuger roſet, hath the vertue of comforting and ſtaying, & helpeth the bloudy flixe, the chollerick vomiting, the faintnes of body, & the Cardiake paſſiō. And the dew ſalne on Roſe leaues, & gathered into a cleane quil, which drop on the nether eye lid, and it wil amend the blearednes of the eyes. And the drye Roſe leaues boyled in wine and drunk, doth amend the paines of the head, the eies, the eares and the gummes: & the ſame caſt in gliſter forme, doth help the corruptions both of the bowells and womens priuy places: And the red Roſe water drūk in *Balneo Maria* hath many goodly effects: for the ſame water drunk, doth ſtrengthen & coole the braine, the heart, the ſtomack, and al the inward members: ſtrengthneth alſo the ſpirits & natural heate, and preſerueth from rottennes. Take one ounce of this red Roſewater, a litle quantity of white wine, one dram of Tutia, to which ad of Aloes Hepatike and of ſuger candy of each twenty graines, theſe mix altogither, which after drop, (as need requireth) into the eares, it doth clenſe, drye and ſtrengthen the ſight and the eies: and the ſame water dropped with a little ſuger into the eies, doth help the exulceration and rednes of the eies, proceeding of heate: which being drunk faſting, vnto the quantity of three ounces, doth take away the giddines of the head, and ſtrengthen the liuer. Theſe hitherto of the properties of Roſes.

Of the ordring, care and ſecrets of the hearbe Baſil. Chap. 29.

BAſill for his excellent ſmell and ſauour hath bene greately counted vpon in ancient time, in ſomuch that Kings and Princes (for the greate delight which they conceiued in this hearbe) did plant the ſame in their gardens. And the time of ſowing this hearb, after the minde of Columella, ought to be done in the beginning of the moneth of May, in fat earth: and when the ſeedes be ſowen and couered with earth, then to be preſſed downe with a roller, and diligently trod downe with the feete. For if the Gardener ſhall leaue the ſeedes vn-

troden downe, that they do lye hollowe in the earth, they will putrifie and come to no proofe. Theophrastus writeth a maruellous matter of the Basil, that if the seedes be sowen with curssed wordes (like as some do in the Hempseed) that then they will come vp the better and the sooner but I rather wish to tarry the longer for them. The sooner the seedes will breake and come vp if after the sowing they be dayly sprinkled with warme water. And some wish the seeds to be sprinkled with vineger if they be sowen towards the winter, for that with such sprinkling they sooner spring vp. And Pliny willeth the Basil to be watred onely at noone time of the day, whereas all other hearbes are to be watred morning and euening with cold water. And when the Basil is come vp an handfull high, then to be cut off so right and straight as is possible, although it be forbidden in the like sort to touch it with yron, as the hearb-grace, Mintes and Sauery. And Gargilius Martialis writeth a marueilous matter and worthy to be noted, that the Basil sometimes bringeth forth purple flowres, sometimes white, and sometimes red of colour like to the Rose.

And Crispus (as writeth Pliny) affirmeth the hearb to be vnprofitable vnto the stomack, the vrine, & the clearenes of the eyes: besides, to cause frenzines, the forgetfull sleepines, and stoppings or corruptions of the Liuer: and for this hee thought it best to be eschewed both of men and goates. And the Greek writers think the Basil so disagreeing and contrary to women that if the whole Basil with the root, be put secretly vnder the dish of meate set on the table (the woman not knowing thereof) that she shall not taster taste of the meat so long as the hearb there lyeth. And Diodorus writeth that the much eating of Basil doth ingender abundance of lice.

The Phisicke helpes.

For the temperament and qualitie of the Basil, Authors do not agree, for *Auicen* writeth that it is hot and dry in the second degree, but *Galen* and *Ætius* write, that the Basil is heating in the second degree, & that it hath a certain excrement moisture, for the which cause, it is thought dangerous to receiue

to receiue inward, but outward to be anoynted, it doth put away and digeſt. And now the ſmelling to the Baſil doth comforte the braine, and yet the ſmell there of doth greatly harme a weake braine. And the ſeedes ought to be gathered in the moneth of July, for then they be beſt. And the leaues ſodden and drunk, doth take away the ſwimming of the head: And the like doth the hearb preuaile, if it be ſteeped for a night in wine, and after drunk. And the hearb ſodden in wine, doth cauſe it to be pleaſant of ſmell, & heateth a cold ſtomacke, and helpeth digeſtion: and the pouder of the hearb drunk with the iuce of ſlowes, for eight daies together, doth helpe an outward rupture: and the decoction of this herb in water, and the ſame applyed like a foment about the priuie place, doth both cleanſe the matrice, and drawe downe the tearmes: and the iuce of Baſil drunke of women in trauell with childe, doth not only moue forward the birth, but cleanſeth the after birth: and the hearbe ſodden in wine and oyle, and applyed to the fundament, dooth ceaſe the often deſire to the ſtoole: and beeing boyled in raine water, and drunke with a little pouder of the iuice of ſlowes, doth help the fluxe of the belly, proceeding of cold. The ſeeds drawen dy the noſthrils, prouoke ſneeſing: and being mixed with ſhomakers blacke doth take away warts, and maketh them riſe vp by the roots. And the ſeedes drunk do ſoften the belly and put away winde: and beeing drunk in wine, do put away all melancholly ſadnes, ſtirre vp the minde, cauſe boldnes vnto the fearfull, and make merry the ſad. And the Baſil helpeth the ſtomacke, for that it digeſteth hard meates, and profitable it is both to the Liuer and hart: and the hearb bruſed and mixed with barly meale and vineger, and that laid in plaiſter forme, doth help inflamations of the Lungs: and the ſauour of Baſil doth help the ſtopping of the braine and noſe, purgeth the head, & ſtaieth the rewme: and the iuce of Baſil dropped into the eies, doth cleanſe the mittes of the eies, and running of them: and the hearb eaten worketh the like. Theſe hitherto of the propertics of the Baſil.

Of the ordering, care and secrets, of the sweete Marioram. Chap. 30.

MArioram for the pleasant smell, is an hearbe much esteemed of all persons, and may either bee sowne in seedes or set in slippes, and it loueth to be set in olde dung (the earth before well digged vp) and to be set in the moist and shadowey places, for so it groweth the fuller and big, but set in an open and sunny place, it groweth the shorter and crispes. It may either be sowne or set in the spring time, and remooued to beds well dressed with drie dung, for so it prospereth the better.

The Phisicke helps.

Mariorum is hot and drie in the second degree, & ought to be gathered in the sommer when it floureth, and after dryed in a shadowey place, for so it will serue for a yeare. And now the Marioram sodden in lie, and the head washed with the same, doth cease the grieuous pain therof. Also the Marioram comforteth the braine, openeth the stopping of the members, and taketh away the disease called Apoplexia. And the pouder of Marioram, giuen with meate, or drunke in wine, doth heate the coldenes of the stomack, & comforteth digestion. And the drye leaues brought to pouder and annoynted with hony, do take away black and blew spots of the skin. And the oyle of Mariorum doth heat aswel the inner members as the outward, and the ioynts and sinewes. And the oile also doth heal womēs places: & applyed warm doth help all greefes, comforteth the braine, & al the members of the body. Also this hearb hath the propertie of heating all the inner members, softneth the milt, and asswageth the swelling thereof. The decoction of the hearb druk, doth help the water beginning between the skin, the streightnes of making of water, & the griping of the body. And ỹ flours & hearb laid in a fine bag, & that aplied to the stomack, doth take away the paine & greefe therof. And the pouder of the Mariorum drawne vp into the nose, doth both clense and likewise heate the head, and may serue all persons for the like cause. And the vapour of the decoction of this hearbe

received

receiued beneath, dooth cleanse the matrice: and the hearbe made in a pessarie, and applied vp, dooth draw downe the tearmes. The hearb with waxe applied in plaister forme on loose members, doth strengthen them, aswageth swellings and other griefes. And the pouder of the Marioram, with a little ginger, drawn vp in the nose, dooth prouoke sneesing and stayeth rume. These hitherto of the properties of the Marioram.

Of the ordring, care, and secrets of the Marigolde. Chap. 31.

THe Marigold is a floure verry well knowen, and to bee found in most Gardens at this day, which renueth euery moneth, and is to be found as well in Winter as in Sommer. And this is named (of the Italians) the monethly floure, or floure of euery moneth. And this floure also of certain, is named the Husbandmans Diall, for that the same so aptly declareth the houres of morning and euening, by the opening and shutting of it. Also it is named the sunnes floure, for that after the rising of the Sunne vnto noone, this floure openeth larger and larger, but after the noone time, vnto the setting of the Sunne, it closeth and shutteth more and more: so after the setting of the Sunne, the floure is then wholy shut vp together. Marigold seedes be commonly sowne in a well laboured and dressed ground, and in the increase of the moone for so they prosper the better. And to haue them greate big, and to beare thicke and brode floures, you must remoone and set the young plantes often, and this alwaies in the increase of the Moone, and that you also put many seedes into one hole together, and water them in the springing vp. And if in the remooning you set them thin they prosper the better.

The Phisicke helpes.

The floures being steeped in vineger & salt, may be kept for two yeares. And now the floures drunk in wine, dooth comfort the stomack, procure an appetite to meat, consume the humours of the stomack, and heat a cold stomacke. And the rind of the root sodden in wine and drunke, doth both digest the cruill humors, and helpeth the diseases of the liuer,

And the pouder of the rind of the root, mixt with the iuice of Fenell, a litle wine, and a litle oyle, and boyled togeather into a thicknes, and a litle waxe put vnto the same, making therof an ointment, with the which annoint the milt or cold stomack, and it doth mightily helpe: and the iuice of the leaues dropped into the eares, doth slea the wormes: and the rinds brought to pouder, and laid on euill pushes, dooth heale them: and the iuice of the herbe and roote made in glister forme and applied, dooth helpe the palsie members. And to women hauing their breastes swollen through the stay of monthly courses, let the floures of the Marigold, the Spikenard, and wine be ministred, which both doth asswage the swelling, and prouoke the Termes (as writeth *Matheus Saluaticus*) And against the pissing of bloud, take floures of the Marigold, and boile the same, and then drinke thereof, and it will stay in short time: and the water distilled of the floures, doth heale al the griefes of the eies, whether the same be caused of heat or of cold, and cleareth the eies: also it putteth away all griefes of the head. These hitherto of the properties of the Marigold.

Of the ordring and care of the Lauender. *Chap.* 32

LAuender is an herbe sweete in smelling, and at this day growing in moste gardens: of the which be two kinds, the one growing high, and sending foorth a great sauour, which for that it giueth no lesse sauor than the Spike, is of the same named Spikenard: and the other, both in the largenes of the leafe and sauor, is lesse. And for that the same is occupied in baths, and in the washing of hands, for the sweetnes of smell, therefore of moste men named the Lauender. Also the first is named the Male, and the other the Female, as sundry authors write. And now the Lauender loueth to be set in an open and Sunny place, and in stony earth, for so it prospereth the better.

The Phisicke helpes.

Lauender hath the vertue of heating & drying, but profiteth not vnto the digestion of meat: and now if any apleth the Lauender often to the nose in smelling thereto, it dooth both

both comfort and cleare the ſight: and who ſo boyleth Lauender in water, and that a ſhirt wet in the ſame, and after dried again be worne, no Louſe after wil abide in that ſhirt, ſo long as the ſhirt keepeth the ſmell: and the floures haue ſingular vertues, eſpecially to the helping of the Apoplexy. Alſo the floures ſteeped in wine, and after diſtilled, and of the ſame holden in the mouth, doth recouer the ſpeech loſt, proceeding of the Apoplexie: and Lauender hath many other vertues beſides: for the ſame helpeth al the cold griefes of the braine, crampe, and gripings of the body, proceeding of cold: It helpeth alſo the ſtopping of the milt, heateth the belly, and ſendeth downe the tearmes. And this hearbe (with the floures ſhred) ought to be diſtilled in Iune, which drunk vnto the quantity of two ounces, doth helpe the gidines of the head: & the like if the water be rubbed all ouer the head, and ſo let drie in of it ſelfe: and the ſame water in like quantity vſed, doth help the crampe, the Apoplexie, the aſtoniſhing and the trembling of the members, and handes. Alſo this water helpeth the palſie members, if they be often annointed and rubbed with it: and likewiſe helpeth the heauines in the mouing of the tongue, by drinking three ounces at a time: alſo it helpeth vlcers and paines of the teeth, if the ſame be often holden in the mouth: and the ſame water helpeth well the bliſtering of the mouth, if the mouth be waſhed with it. Theſe hitherto of the properties of Lauender.

Of the ordering, and care, of the Spikenard. Chap.

THe Spikenard groweth like vnto the Lauender, ſauing that the leaues be thicker and bigger, and beareth alſo a longer ſtalke and bigger floures, which bee of purple colour like to the Lauender, and hath beſides greater vertues. And now the Spikenard loueth to be ſet in a fat earth, well laboured and dreſſed, and in an open and Sunny place of the garden.

The Phiſicke helpes.

The Spikenard is hot in the firſt degree, and dry in the ſecond and cauſeth vrine. And if of the decoction of it be a plaſter made & the ſame laid to the priuy place, ſtaieth the ſuperfluous

fluous course of the tearmes, and taketh away the humors of womens places. And the Spikenard drunke with colde water, puts away the weaknes and trembling of the heart. And this Spikenard infused in Lie, & the head washed therwith, doth cause the haire to grow, & helpeth the sheading of the haire. And the oyle of the Spike, well drawne by glasse, is marueilous sweet, and hath many vertues, & especially vnto the palsie members, if they be annointed therwith. And the said oile dooth ease the gout, and all other griefes of the ioyntes. Also this oyle dooth help the swellings of the stomacke, the diseases of the liuer, the kidnies and the kings euill. The decoction of the Spikenard, helpeth against the palsie of the tongue, comforteth the sinews, and dryeth vp the moisture occupying the instrument of the tongue. And the floures of the Spikenard infused in wine, and set in the sun for a certaine space, in a narrow mouth glasse wel stopped, and after distilled by glasse in *Balneo Mariæ* with a soft fire (& if the fresh floures may be had, then need you not to infuse them in wine) it is very precious, and being discreetly vsed, helpeth all colde griefes aswell within as without the bodie: also the griefes of the head and braine, if a linnen cloath dipped in the same, be applied to the nose: And the same water helpeth the rume, and distilling of the head: and this water drunk, vnto the quantity of two ounces at a time, doth helpe the Collicke passion, proceeded of colde: and it ceaseth the paines and giddines of the head, proceeding of a colde cause, if the noule of the head, & for-head, be annointed therewith. And this water helpeth the colde and palsie members, heating them, and putteth away the shaking of them. These hitherto of the properties of Spikenard.

Of the ordring, care, and secrets of the white Lillie. Chap. 34

The white Lillie, for the beautie and smell, is affirmed of Plinie, to be next to the Rose, and higher of growth then the most floures of the garden. And the increase of this Lillie is marueilous, in that one roote sendeth forth and yeeldeth

(for

(for the moste part) fiftie heads. And Palladius willeth the Lillie to be planted in the moneth of October, November, and March, and that in a fat and well dressed earth, and the heads set a span or a foote a sunder, like as is taught hereafter in the setting of Garlike. And to make them to beare purple flowers, gather (as Pliny teacheth) to the number of ten or twelue stalkes in the moneth of July, or when they floure, which binde together and hang in the smoake, and after that, slip off the leaues, making the stalkes naked, which steepe in red wine-lees, in the moneth of March (so long) vntill the knots of the stalkes haue sufficiently drunke in, and appeare well coloured as a purple, and then set the stalkes into the earth, hauing the Wine-lees hanging both on the stalkes and rootes, and those after shall send forth and beare purple flowers.

And Florentius writeth, that the Floures of Lillies will shewe red if that betweene the rinde and the small heads growing about the roote, you poure of that fine powder of Vermilion, or else the pouder of red lead, regarding that you harm not the small heads growing about. And likewise dying them of any other colour, euen of the same colour will the floures growe: as if you list to haue either greene or blew Lillies.

And to haue Lillies all the yeare, take the buds not opened, with some of the stalkes, those put into a newe earthen pot not glased, and after stop close the mouth of the pot, and when you shall need them, then set them on the side of a Vason in the Sunne, and after they haue felt a while the warmth, they will open and spread abroad. And Anatolius writeth, that you may haue Lillies at diuers times of the yeare, if in the proper time of the yeare you set some of the heads twelue fingers deepe, other eight fingers deepe, and other but foure fingers: and thus in the growing vp will they beare floures at sundrie times one after another. On this wise may many other floures be made growe, and to beare at diuers times.

The Phisick helps

The white Lillie is hot and dry of qualitie, but the flours be of a temperate qualitie, and the oyle of Lillies doe greatly profit, by annointing on the belly, for that it heateth

mens places, and softneth the humours there hardned. The root sodden and laid on hot impostumes, dooth ripen them, and the roote roasted in hot embers and brused, and after mixed with Rosewater, and the same laide on the holy fire, doth heale the same if it be dayly vsed, and in the like sort laide on wounds, doth increase the flesh on them. The roote sodden and brused and mixed with Barrowes grease, or oile Oliue, and after laid on impostumes, dooth mightily soften them: & of the Lillie is made a good ointment on this wise, Take of the white Lilly roots, of the roots of Bramker fine, and of marsh mallow roots of each a quarter of a pound, al these brused together verie well in foure measures of wine, and after seeth all in halfe a pinte of oyle, vnto a thickneſſe, which straine through a linnen cloth, putting therto a little waxe, and make thereof an oyntment, and annoynt it on the hard milt on the left side, and it will greatly helpe, for that it doth not onely soften the same, but putteth away the pains thereof. Item, the root of the Lillie sodden, and after boyled with oyle of Roses, and annoynted, doth heale burnings.

Also, the root sodden in wine, and the same drunk in the euening at the going to bed, doth purge down-ward al noysome humors of the body. And the leaues sodden in vineger and laid plaister-wise, doth heale woundes. And the roote rosted and mixed with hony, & that laid plaister-wise, doth heale loose & cut sinewes. These hitherto of the properties of the Lillie.

Of the ordering, and care, and secrets of the wood Lillie. Chap. 35.

THe wood Lillie or Lillie of the valley, is a floure meruailous sweete, flourishing especially in the spring time, and growing properly in woods, but chiefly in valeies and on the sides of hilles. But now for the great commoditie and vse knowne (of the floure) the same of late yeares is brought and planted in Gardens. And this hearb springeth vp with two leaues together, in fashion like the white Lillie, and in the middle springeth vp a small slender stalke: in the top of which growe foorth little small floures, in a manner white, and of a pleasant

pleasant smell. And the roote of it is white within the earth, but wrinckled without, and this Lillie loueth to bee set in a mosse ground and shadowey place of the Garden, for so it prospereth the better. The commodities of this floure, is alwaies had in the spring time.

The Phisicke helpes.

The wood Lillie is colde and moist in the second degree, and the floures be of greater effect then the hearbe, and the root passeth the flonres in vertue. The flowers drunk in new wine, doth strengthen the heart, the brain, the liuer, & al the spirituall members (as they do name them) and of the same is aptly ministred vnto the panting of the heart, giddinesse of the head, the falling sickneſſe, the Apoplexie and frensines.

It doth also help those which be pained with a trembling of the heart, & prickings about the heart, and the members which shak & tremble. Moreouer, it doth also stop the passages of the Leapry beginning, that the same spread no further abroad, and it doth put away the scabs & ringworme, being annointed vpon, & the sooner if you wash them sundry times with the water, Furthermore, it asswageth the swellings of the stings of Bees, Waspes, and such like, by striking or annointing the water vpon them, and the water of the distilled wine, dooth put away the inflamation and mist of the eyes, by often vsing the same, and some distill this water for the aboue named diseases, on this wise.

First they take the floures & lay them to steepe for a moneth in new wine, & then taking them quite from the wine they will distill fiue time in a Limbecke or body of Glasse, which wine so distilled, is more pretious then golde: for if any drinke of this water, with six grains of pepper & a little of the Lauender water, he need not after feare the Apoplexy that month. And *Otho Brunsfelsius* teacheth the making of the water on this wise. First take a gallō glasse filled with the best old wine, into which put a pound of floures, setting the same in the sun for 40. daies, after distil it in a limbeck of glas twice ouer, into which put a little Lauender water & pepper

But other take old Wine, putting into the same a pound of the floures, and after forty daies standing in the Sunne, distil the same, into which put of the floures of Lauender & Rosemary, and some goood spices, distilling it ouer againe, and then keep it as a most pretious water, well stopped in a narrowe mouthed glasse: and a spoonfull of this water giuen to the patient at the point of death, dooth reuiue and prolong his life vntill his naturall time appointed, and it dooth comfort the braine, helpeth the Apoplexy, ceaseth the chollick passion, and helpeth the impostume hapning in the hinder part of the brain: also, this distilled water giueth a good memorie and ready wit, by annointing the hinder part or noule of the head and fore-head therwith. And the water of the floures onely distilled in the middle of the spring, and drunk to the quantity sixe ounces at a time, doth help those which be poysoned, and the same water helpeth the bite of a madde dog, the birth childe, comforteth the braine, the heart & the sences, and also putteth away falling sicknes, if the same be drunk for forty daies together. And the same water drunke helpeth the strangury, the pricking about the heart, inflamation of the Liuer, and doth stay the excesse of the month courses. These hitherto of the properties of the wood Lilly.

Of the ordering and care of the Floure-de-luce. Chap. 36

The Floure-deluce, is a floure well knowne to all persons bearing leaues both bigger, flatter, and larger then that called the Sedge. And the roote and hearbe needeth no other diligence of setting, then to be planted in a drie earth, well laboured and dressed about the beginning of March. And the rootes grow into ioyntes, solide, and verie sweete smelling: which some plucke vp about the beginning of the Spring, and cutting them into round slyces, after stitch them through with a needle, and hang them vp to drie in the shadow.

And those rootes also be best commended, which bee verie short, verie hard somewhat red, sweete smelling, biting in the taste, and which in the beating of it in a morter, causeth the person to sneeze.

The

The Phiſick helps.

The roote of the Floure-delure, is only vſed in medicine, and is hot and dry of qualitie in the ſecond degree: and it is very profitable againſt the cough, in extenuating thoſe humours of the breſt, which hardly are ſpit foorth: and it alſo purgeth the groſſe flegmatick and chollericke humours, & taking ſixe drams of the roots, with water and hony, and the ſame drunke, prouoketh ſleepe, ſtaieth the tearmes, & ceaſeth the greefes of the body, and being drunke with Vinegar, doth help the diſeaſes of the milt, the crampe, the colde ſhaking, which comes before the fit of an ague, and helpeth alſo the ſheading of the Sperme: and drunk in wine prouoketh monthly courſes, and the decoction thereof applyed to the womans priuie part, doth ſoften the hardnes thereof, and likewiſe open the ſtopping therof: & mixed with turpentine, by annointing, doth eaſe the greefes of the loynes and hips: and the pouder onely drawne vp into the noſe, prouoketh ſneezing, and cleanſeth the head, and by chawing the roote in the mouth, dooth amend a ſtinking breath, and taketh away the ſtrong ſauour comming from the armhoales, and the greene freſh roote boyled, and the ſame laid plaiſterwiſe, doth ſoften wens, & other hard impoſtumes.

And the pouder of the dry roote, mixed with honny, and the ſame thicke laid on Vlcers, dooth cleanſe them: and the ſame aplied plaiſterwiſe, doth draw out the bones in wounds and doth couer again the bare fleſh, and the pouder of the root applied plaſter-wiſe to the forhead, doth greatly help the paine & griefe of the head: alſo, the pouder of the root, mixt with the pouder of white Noſewort, and two parts of hony, the ſame annointed, dooth take away the pimples of the face, & all ſpots cauſed by the Sun, and againſt the dropſie, take a new laid Eg, pouring out the white and to the yolk put ſo much of the iuice of the roote as was the white, after ſet the ſame egge awhile in hot embers, which being ſufficiently warm, ſup off faſting in the morning, and the patient ſhall after ſend forth a merueilous aboundance of water betweene the skinne and the flege; and this hath bene often ex-

perienced. These hitherto of the properties of the Floure-deluce.

Of the ordering, cace, and secrets of Pionie. Chap. 37

PIonie is an hearbe at this day well knowne, of the which be two kindes, the Male and the Female. It groweth after this manner. The leaues thereof be hard, from the neather part, and in colour like vnto Horehound, and the rootes cleauing together like to the rootes of Violets, & be reddish in colour, bearing bigge and purple floures, and resembling the forme of the Red Rose, hauing within the floure a yellowish seede like to the Rose, of which come the cods, in fashion like to Almonds, and grow together, hauing within red seedes, to to the bignesse of the smaller Pease. And the stalke also, on which the seedes grow, beareth big reddish floures, which of some is named the blessed Rose: but the seede of moste, is named the blessed Rose. And the seedes ioy to be sowen in a well dressed earth, and to be weeded about at the comming vp of the plants.

The Phisicke helpes.

The roote Pyony heateth and dryeth in the second degree, and indureth for ten yeares in his efficacy, and hath also the vertue of comforting & cherishing the body, & causeth besides vrine, and purgeth the liuer and kidneis: which roote boyled in wine and drunk, doth purge the blood, and the root of the piony is aptly ministred to women in childbed, being not throughly purged after the birth of child, for that the same causeth the comming downe of the tearmes, & purgeth them so without harme: and the quantity of an Almond is to be ministred at a time. Also, the root boiled in wine and drunke, dooth help the gripings of the belly, and sheading of the gall: and likewise it helpeth the pains of the kidneis & bladder, if the same bee with any stopping of the vrine, and a smoake made of the little fine branches of the root, and receiued into the nose, doth put away the Kings Euill, & the Piony root doth take away the black spots of the body, also, the root hanged about the necke, dooth put away the falling sicknes: as by a late practise was tried, that while a Childe

a Childe had this root hanging about the necke, ſo long he was not grieued with this diſeaſe, but when the ſame was taken from his neck, then was he vexed in like ſort as before: and this did the male Piony roote, but the ſeeds doe not the like, and this may the male be known from the famale. The Female Piony root boyled in wine and drunke, doth aptly purge women after the birth of child, & the ſame alſo doth the ſeedes of it. And in other matters the roots of both haue in a manner the like properties, and the field roote of the Piony, as *Menardus* writeth, worne about the necke, dooth put away the vapours flying vp to the braine, & ſtrengtheneth the brain: but the male only doth this, which beareth leaues like vnto the Walnut, hauing a white roote of a finger thicknes, and a ſpanne long, and certaine will, that the roote be digged vp in the waine of the moon, ſhe thē being vnder the earth. Theſe ſeedes of the Pyony doe help eſpecially the termes of women, which ſend them down, & the dead yongling: which being drunke in wine, doth help the hard deliuerie of childe: alſo the ſeedes of Piony bruſed with Setwal, galingale, and ſugar, of each a like weight, that ſame pouder taken morning and euening, dooth put away poiſon, and gently looſeth the belly, & ten or twelue ſeeds of the piony drunke in olde wine, doth ſtay the ſuperfluous courſes of women: and fifteene ſeedes drunk (of the black) in either water and hony, or wine, do help the night Mare, the ſtrangling of the ſecrets and paines of the matrice. And the pouder of the ſeeds of piony miniſtred in meat & drink to children, doth ſend foorth the ſtone beginning in them, and the pouder of the root of piony (miniſtred in wine) in which the root it ſelfe, and Mugwort ſhall be boyed, dooth helpe the falling ſickneſſe, and the ſame pouder boyled in Caſtorie and drunke, helpeth the palſie. Theſe hitherto of the properties of the Pyony.

Of the ordering and care of white Poppy. Chap. 38.

THe white Poppy muſt bee ſowne in hot and dry places, like as you doe other Pot-herbs. It is thought that this

herbe

hearb doth the better come vp there, where as twigs or reds and shrubs of trees be burnt. But the Poppie and Dill, haue the like conditions and ordering of sowing, which the Charuill hath. And Palladius willeth the Poppie to bee sowne in September, in hot and drie places among the pot-hearbs, and yet in temperate and cold places, in the monthes of Januarie, Februarie, March and Nouember, either alone or with other hearbes.

The Phisicke helpes.

Poppie is cold and dry in the first degree: yet as touching the kinds, the white Poppy is cold & moist, and the blacke colde and drie, which doth more mortifie: and the seedes of the white gathered in the summer when they be ripe, may well be kept for fiue yeares, which haue the vertue of prouoking or causing sleepe, and of aswaging: and now to prouoke sleep, make a plaister of the white Poppy seeds brused, and mixed with the white of an Egge and womans milke, which apply hot to the forehead, & on the temples, and the women of Salerne giue to their Children the pouder of the white poppy with milke, to cause them to sleepe, and the seedes of the white Poppy, or the hearbe it selfe brused, & mixed with the oyle of roses, and this laide plaister-wise on vlcers proceeded of a bruse, doth draw out the great heate. And the same applyed to a hot liuer, doth much helpe: and the pouder of white Poppy seedes, mixed with oyle Oliue, and annointing the ridge of the backe with it, dooth take away the ache of the ioynts, and strengthneth them, and the iuice of the white Poppy mixed with the oyle of Roses, and annointing the feete therewith, doth put away the paine & ache of the hot gout. And the seedes of white Poppy beaten to pouder, and mixed with the oyle of Vyolets, and annointing the backe-bone therewith, dooth helpe both the burning of the ague, and heate of the liuer.

These hitherto of the properties of the white Poppy.

Of

Of the ordring, care, and secrets of the floure Petilius. Chap. 39.

THe floure named Petilius, which of the Frenchmen is named the little Indian eye, must be sowne in the midst of sommer, that in the ende of Harueſt it may ware to a tree and bring forth floures vnto winter. It is also sowen in the seedes and set in slips: but the slips alwaies dye through the sharp colde of the winter (howsoeuer they be tender) and yet they refuse no ground. But they prosper best in a fat ground and shoote vp a mightie heigth, so that they appeare bushie, and spread into many branches, like a mightie tree or greate stalke resembling neereſt to the sweet Briar tree.

Of the ordering, and care, of the Velvet floure, or floure Armour. Chap. 40.

THis floure (in a manner) neuer decayeth, but keepeth still his colour, and the floure also is eared, much like to an ear of corne, very purple of colour and beautifull to behold, yet the same hath neither smell nor taſte. And it properly groweth vp in the month of Auguſt; and indureth vnto Harueſt. And when all other floures be withered and dead, and it also in a manner withered, then after the moiſtning with water, it dooth recouer againe, and serueth to make winter garlands.

And this floure is sowne in many places in pots of earth, that growing from Auguſt, it may flouriſh vnto October, in which time bearing the floure, it is to be gently and tenderly gathered. And the floures so gathered, to be put into an Ouen (after the drawing of bread) and there gently dryed: after which, the Maydens of Fraunce and of other Countries, doe lay them charily vp and keepe them vntill wintertime to make garlands of them, and to hang them about the house.

And now of this floure, is heere sufficiently written, which although it bee not to be counted vppon amongſt the smelling floures, yet for the beautie thereof, worthy to be sowne in Gardens.

The Phisicke helps.

The hearbe named floure Armour, is of quantity colde and dry in the third degree. And the floure of this boyled in wine and honny, and drunke, dooth help the perrillous fluxe of bloud, & the continuall paine of the often scouring of the belly, and staieth also the aboundance of the reddes in women, and the white fluxes of the bellie. Also the same helpeth the spitting of bloud, especially when any vessel or part in the Lungs or breast shall be broken: and the hearb sodden and laid plaister-wise on brused members, doth put away clotted bloud, & healeth the places speedily: and the floures boyled in wine and drunke, doth heale the biting of any venemous wormes, and the Sciaticke: the distilling of the vrine, and a Rupture: and the pouder of this hearbe, to the quantity of three halpence in waight, drunke in white wine, doth stay the rume distilling from the head: and the hearbe sodden in wine, and the fundament fomented therewith, doth stay and take away the fluxe, and the piles: and in the same manner applied, dooth helpe the often desire vnto the stoole: And the root holden in the mouth, dooth cease the paine of the teeth: and the rootes brused and mixt with May butter, and of that made an ointment, which annointed on inflamations, doth asswage them. And the hearbe dooth keepe cloathes and garments from being harmed by worms and moathes. These hitherto of the properties of the veluet floure.

Of the ordering, care and secrets of the Gilliflowre. Chap. 41.

THe Gilliflowre for his sweetnes and beautie, is named of the Frenchymen the little eie, and of the Italians Gariophilon, for that it giueth a sweete smell and sauor, like vnto Cloues. The seeds of the Gilliflowre be seldome sowen: but at the beginning of the spring and harueste: you may breake off slips from the roote, and set them againe (being weathed at the end) in a halfe Tubbe or Pot, the earth therein made fat with rotten dung, and when the frostes oppresse and nippe them in the Winter time, then may they be remooued, and set vnder some couert, in places safe from the bitter colde.

And

And in faire dayes when as the sunne shineth warme, then set the pot or halfe tubbe abroad, that the plantes may so be comforted with the warmenesse of the Ayre, and you may sometimes suffer the plantes to be moistened a little with a gentle raine. And after those plantes being set in beds, doe spread in the summer into small branches, then do the Gardners slip them off from the greater stalkes, about the set of them before the Cups at the tops (where the floures appeare) be sprung out. And after this manner you may dresse and set out a whole bed with a fewe plantes, if you will. There be some which take Cloues and bruse them, lapping them about the stalkes next to the rootes, and some make holes through with a bodkin, that the floures after spring up may sauour of them. And there bee some others which write, that by the often remouing and setting of the plant, the floures spred the broader & pleasanter to the eye. And Cardanus writeth, that you may haue Gillyfloures (in a manner) vnto Hollentide, if scraping of the vpper rinde of the plants, you set them againe with the rootes in horse dung, which so causeth them to beare faire floures in the winter, if you keep them from the cold aire. And certain new practitioners write that you may make one stalke to bring forth floures of many colours, if you take the seeds of euery colour of Gillyfloures and put them altogether into a thin small reed, or kerdle of a sheep or goat, or els tyed vp in a thin woone linnen cloth, setting the same in earth well mired with dung, which after the watring will cause the plant to come vp bearing the like number of colours in one stalke as they were seedes sowen. And there be some which write that if you mixe the Basil seedes with the Gillyfloure seeds, and vse them as before said, that they will spring together on one stalke: and the leaues of the floures put into a glasse of vineger, and set in the Sunne for certaine dayes, doth make a pleasant vineger.

Of the ordring and care, of the Strawberies. Chap. 42.

THe Strawberrie is accounted among those hearbs that growe in the fieldes of their owne accorde. And the Berries be much eaten at all mens tables in the Sommer, for the

pleasantnes of them, which for a more delight in eating, they dresse with wine and suger. The rehearsall of the forme of this hearb needeth not, seeing the same is well knowne vnto all persons. And it aptly groweth in shadowey places, and rather vnder the shadowe of other hearbes, then alone. And the plantes set in Gardens, will growe vnto the bignes of a Mulberry, if the earth before in the beds be well dressed, and diligently tended of the Gardner. But the hearbe of it selfe continueth not aboue a yeare.

The Phisicke helpes.

The Berries be colde and moist in the third degree, and the like is the hearb. And *Vigonius* writeth, that the Strawberrie leaues be of a colde qualitie, so that the iuice of them with the wine of the Pomgranets, and a little Rose-water mixed togither and applyed, doth helpe hot impostumes in the beginning, and in the increase of them. And the Strawberry leaues vsed in a bath, doe greatly help the stone. And for the mightie paines of the hips, take three or four handfull of the Straw-berrie leaues seething them in water and after bath the pacient from the nether part vpward: which so done, then annoynte the grieued place with this oyntment following. Take the oyntment of marsh mallowes, one once, of honie halfe an ounce, of wax a dram weight, all these mixe together, making thereof an oyntment: and this doth not only help the ach of the hips, but softneth the matter hardned in them and prouoketh vrine. And the Berries be profitable to men, in that they take away the vnnaturall heat, & do especially proffit the chollerick persons, for that they coole and moisten them. Also take of the iuice of the Berries, and of Plantine water, of each of them eight ounces, of Rosed hony two ounces, of the iuce of the Mulberries one ounce, of Albigræci & of Balaustia, of each a dram, all these mix together, washing the mouth therewith, which so helpeth the impostumes of the throate. And this hearbe eaten with meate, doth help such as are diseased in the milt:

and

and the like dooth the iuice of the hearbe drunke: and the ſame iuice giuen with white pepper, dooth helpe the ſhort winded: and the Berries alſo doe ſtay thirſt, profit the ſtomacke, eſpecially of the chollericke. And the decoction of the roots drunk, doth qualifie the Liuer, being taken morning and euening: and the like doth the decoction of the heatbe and root together, both qualifie the heat of the liuer, and clenſe the raines and bladder: and the beſt diſtilling of the Berries, is when they be ripe, but not ouer ſoft, and thoſe which grow in the hilly woods be the better: and now the diſtilled water drunk, or mixt with ſomwhat and ſo drunk, doth qualifie the vnnaturall heat, and ſtayeth thirſt: and the ſame water drunke morning and euening, vnto the quantitie of foure ounces at a time, dooth helpe the Leaprie, and purgeth the bloud, by drinking of it in wine, or otherwiſe eaten with bread; and cleanſeth the foule ſcabbe of the bodie: and in the ſame manner drunk, dooth helpe the liuer, the kings euill, looſeth the breaſt, comforteth the heart, purgeth the bloud, and preuaileth againſt the ſtōe in the loyns, kidneis and bladder. Alſo it helpeth vlcers of the throate, the grieuous ſwellinges of the ſame, and the ſtincke of the mouth, if any gargell the ſame in the mouth or throate: and drunke of women, doth cleanſe them, and ſend downe their tearmes: alſo it healeth all filthy corruptions of the legs, if they be waſhed morning & euening with the ſame, or with linnen wet and applied: and it cureth filthy wounds, if they ſhall be waſhed in the ſame water, or vſing to drinke of the water: alſo it putteth away the ſwelling of the face, if the face be ſundry times waſhed therwith: and mixed with ſalt, and diſtilled once ouer againe. it doth both coole and cleare the eies. Theſe hitherto of the properties of the Strawberries.

Of the ordring, and care, of the Borage, and alſo of the Bugloſſe Chap. 43.

BOrage is ſowen in the moneth of Auguſt, and September, and beſt ſowen in the moneth of Aprill, either alone

lone in beddes, or about the borders of new beddes of other hearbes. And it cannot aptly be sowen in any other time of the yeare, yet may the same plant after the comming vp bee verry well remoued in any time (in a manner) of the yeare, and the seedes ought to be gathered but halfe ripe least they other-wise fall out of the huskes. And the hearbe with the seedes, after the plucking vp, must be laid together on a heape, for the space of two or three daies, that the seeds may so come vnto their full ripenesse. And when conuenient time so serueth, then you may rub the seedes forth on a linnen cloath, for otherwise you cannot aptly come by them: which seedes thus had, may well be kept for two yeares. And the Bugloss, which the Romaines name the Ore tounge, and with vs Langde-beefe, hath the like order in sowing, and vsing of the seedes, which the Borage hath. And yet some write, it loueth to be sowen in an open and Sunny place, and that the earth be well laboured and dressed before, for so it prospereth the better. And the Bugloss also for his singular vertues, deserueth in all gardens to be sowen is a right necessary hearbe.

The Phisick helpes.

Borage, which of *Galen* and *Dioscorides* is named the Bugloss is hot and moist in the first degree. Which the self same *Galen* witnesseth (writing) that the Bugloss is of a moist & temperate hotnesse, so that beeing put into wine in the drinking, causeth gladnesse and mirth: and the Borage boiled in wine, and so drunk: dooth engender good bloud. And those which be pained with the giddines of the head, let them take the iuice of this hearbe, and mixing the same with suger, drinke therof, which doth throughly help the same. And the iuice of the hearbe with Senee, if the same shall be mixed with the Sirope of Borage, and drunke morning and euening, doth increase the senses and putteth away melancholie. And the raw floures eaten, doe cause good bloud, and put away the trembling of the heart: & they worke the like effect, if the floures be drunk in wine. And the sirope of Borage is vsed against the kings euil. And the floures dried and

kept

kept but a yeare, do serue all those diseases, which the herb it selfe helpeth: and the floures put to oyle Oliue, and set in the Sun for a time, with the which annointing the stomack and region of the heart, it doth greatly comfort. And the distilled water (in *Balneo Maria*) of the herb and root drunke morning and euening, to the quantitie of two or three ounces at a time, doth put away the gripings & swellings of the belly, helpeth the bloudy flixe, and the hardnes of fetching winde: and the same in like order drunk, dooth comfort the heart and braine, and increaseth memory and witte, purgeth the bloud, and putteth away frenzines: and linnen cloathes wet in that place, and laid to any place, where either Spider or waspe hath venomed, dooth quickly take away the paine thereof: and red Sarcenet wet in the water and laid to the eies, dooth take away the paine thereof, and cleareth them. And the distilled water of the floures drunke, doth help all the aboue-said diseases which the herb dooth: yet the same is the more precious, for that it dooth purge the bloud, putteth away melancholie, and marueilously purge the heart. And the same water helpeth all distillations of the head, by drinking euery euening, vnto the quantity of two ounces at a time: and it also greatly preuaileth against the burning Agues and the laundize, and cooleth moreouer the liuer. either by drinking, or wetting clothes in the same, and so apliedd often on the region of the Liuer.

And now the Bugloſſe hath the same vertues which the Borage hath, and is hot and moist in the first degree: For the Bugloſſe also being drunke in wine, doth help such diseased in the Lungs, troubled with a dry cough, and boiled in water and honny mixed together (as *Galen* writeth) doth help the coughing through the roughneſſe of the throate. And the Bugloſſe steeped in wine, and tempered with Mellicrate, and after drunke, dooth cause mirth: and often drunke in Wine, dooth purge the red cholier, proceeding of ouermuch heat, and in like manner helpeth the Cardiack passion, and dooth also put away the hurtfull humours of the Lungs.

And

And the iuice drunke with warme water, doth take away the swelling of the feet: also the wine in which the Bugloſſe shal be steeped, drunke, doth maintaine a good memorie, comfort the heart, and ingendreth good bloud: and the distilled water drunke morning and euening, vnto the quantity of two or three ounces at a time with suger, doth helpe those diseased with the bloudy flix, the hardnes of fetching wind and the bestraught of minde, or hauing a weake braine: and the same water helpeth against al hot sicknesses: as ỹ agues, the diseases of the Lungs, the liuer and the milt, it purgeth also the bloud, & putteth away the pricking of the hart and stomacke: and the said water of Bugloſſe, putteth away the Iaundize, cleanseth the Leapry, and scab, & mittigateth the distillings of the head: and it ceaseth the paine and burning of the eies if linnen clothes dipped in the water, be applied either to the forehead or eies: and in the same maner applied, it dooth take awaye the ringing or sound of the eares. And the floures of the Bugloſſe distilled in *Balneo Maria* doe yeild a precious water to comfort the heart and braine, being drunk either with pouder of pearles, or with the confection of *Manus Christi*, made with pearles. These hitherto of the properties both of Borage and Bugloſſe.

Of the ordring and care of Rosemary. Chap. 44.

THe Rosemarie is a plant of a pleasant sauour, which for the beautie and smell of it, is set (at this day) in gardens. And the gardners also in our time, doe make diuers seates, some like to benches and other proper formes (as liketh them best, to be delighted at) in their beds, running of length and of height. And the same plant also in medicine hath a marueilous efficacy. And Dioscorides nameth it the garland rose for that in time past they made garlands thereof. And it is named also of the Greeke Authours Libanotis, for that the leaues and wot of the Rosemarie, doe sauour likest vnto the Frankencense. And the Rosemarie hath a hoarie and hard stalke downeward, and in the vpper part the leaues of it bee sharp, and is both greene aboue, and white vnder the leaues. And the floure of it is blewish, like to the Lauender, and hath

a ſweete ſmell, ſauouring like to turpentine or frankencenſe. And it hath alſo a blacke roote, full of little branches ſhooting out of it, and it may be ſet in any ground, being well labou-red and dreſſed before: but it rather loueth to be planted in a rotten earth, and dunged with ſheepes dung.

The phiſicke helpes.

Roſemary heateth and dryeth in the ſecond degree, and hath the vertue of ſoftning, digeſting, cutting aſunder and cleanſing. And now the Roſemary with Harts tongue ſteeped together for a night in wine, and after drunke, doth put away the Kings euil: and the iuce both of the root and hearb mixed with honny, and drunk, doth help the dulnes of ſight and purgeth the groſenes of humors. And the root bruſed and mixed with hony, and laid on vlcers, doth ſpeedily ſoften them: and the root with Pellitory boyled in wine, and drunke, doth ſoften the belly, and putteth away the paine therof: and the ſame alſo preuaileth againſt the biting of venemous beaſtes and wormes: alſo in the ſame manner tempered with Mugwoort, doth cauſe vrine, and prouoketh the tearmes of women: and the Roſemary floures tyed vp in a faire linnen cloth & boyled in wine, which drunke morning and euening, do put away the griefs of the body, but eſpecially helpeth the griefes of the pappes: and the floures being brought to pouder and drunke in warme wine, dooth make merry the minde, and comfort nature and the blood, & preſerue many alſo from diſeaſes which might otherwiſe happen: and the coles made of the wood or ſtalkes burnt, and the ſame brought to pouder & tyed vp in a linnen cloth, & rubbing the teeth therewith doth make the teeth white, and ſlea the wormes in them: and if he which is diſeaſed with the rewme, make a ſmoake of the barkes, and do holde his head ouer it, it ſpeedily ſtayeth the ſame. And the Roſemary boyled in water and drunke, either alone or mixed with wine, dooth cauſe an appetite to meate. And he which is mightily dry through a greate heate, let him mixe the wine of the ſower Pomgranets, with that water (being colde) in which the Roſemary leaues ſhal be boyled, and drink of the

same, & out of dout it wil help him: and the pouder of Rosmary flours eaten in reare poached egs, doth greatly strengthen nature and amendeth the bloud: and the wine made of Rosemary, if you drink a good draught therof morning and euening, dooth cleanse the blood, prouoketh a desire to meate, expelleth all the inner humors, and helpeth a greate weaknes: and the Rosemary boyled with wilde Penniroyall or Mints, in wine and oyle olive, & that any diseased doth annoint him therwith, doth both cause him to sweat & helpeth the dropsie. And the Rosmary boyled in wine, with hearbgrace & a little pepper, & drunk, doth help the falling sicknes: also the Rosemary boyled in wine with Pellitorie, doth help the greatnes of the Euuela, if the same be gargaled in the mouth: and Rosmary with the flours boyled in wine and that drunk warme morning and euening, & neither eating nor drinking three houres after, doth help the Kings euill, the hard fetching of the breath, openeth the pipe of the lungs, causeth easie spitting forth, helpeth digestion, & ceaseth the gripings of the body, & mundifieth the blood. And the floures boyled in the strongest vineger, and laid plaisterwise to the Nauill, doth stay shortly after, the great flixe of the belly. These hitherto of the properties of the Rosmary,

Of the ordring and care, of the hearb Germander. Chap. 45.

THe hearb Germander, which of the Latines is called the little lowe Oke of the earth, is a plant very short: which as Dioscorides describeth, is not in the growth aboue a span high, bearing small leaues, dented in like the Oke leaues, bitter in taste, bearing purple floures and those verry small, and it also groweth of it owne accorde in rough and stony places: but now this hearb is planted in Gardens. And the seedes ought to be gathered when the hearbe beareth floures, which is about the end of May, as Galen and Macer do write.

The Phisicke helps.

The hearb hath the vertue of heating & drying togither, vnto the third degre, & taketh away the hardnes of the splen or milt, causeth vrine, moueth the tearms, helpeth the dropsie (& this) if in the begining of the sicknes, the patient drink of the

of the decoctiō of the hearb thrice a day: and the hearb bearing the flours doth greatly help bruſed members, if they be waſhed with the ſame, or drunk of the decoction of it: and the hearbe bruſed and laid on Fiſtulaes in the corners of the eies, or if oile made of the hearb be dropped into them, doth forthwith heale them, to that the patient be of a colde complexion, but being a perſon of hot and dry complexion, this helpeth not: and the hearb ſodden in wine and drunk, doth put away the Kings euill: And the Germander ſodden in wine with Fenell ſeeds and Seene, dooth greatly helpe the ſtopping of the liuer and milt: and if Parcely ſeedes be put thereto, then the ſame helpeth the ſtrangury and the ſtone. And the hearb boyled in wine & laid on the palſie members doth help them. The hearb alſo bruſed with oile oliue, and laid vnto wounds doth heale it: and the greene hearb boyled in conduit water and drunk, doth helpe the crampe and palſie: and the ſame decoction drunk, doth helpe the cough, the hardnes of the milt, the ſtraightnes of making water, & the water betweene the skin & fleſh. And this hearb ſodden in wine & drūk, doth preuaile againſt poyſons: & the ſame laid plaiſter-wiſe doth help the bite of venemous beaſts and wormes: and the hearb boyled with wine and vineger, and drunk doth help the hardnes of the milt, an olde cough, and olde vlcers, being mixed with honny and ſo drunk: and the pouder of the herb miniſtred with hony, doth ſlea the worms in the body: and againſt the rewme, heate the pouder of the hearbe in a linnen bag, and apply it on the head, which is a ſpeciall remedy. This herb alſo helpeth the bliſtering of the mouth, if it be waſhed with the decoction thereof thrice a day: alſo it helpeth the ſmall ſcab, if making an ointment with the hearb and barrowes greace, you annoint the skin. Theſe hitherto of the properties of the Germander.

Of the ordring, and cure of the bleſſed Thiſtle. Chap. 46

CArduus Benedictus, or the herb named the bleſſed Thiſtle, is verie well knowne, and of great vſe in medicine, and hath a ſpeciall efficacie againſt poyſons, the plague, and diſeaſes of the hart. And both the name and forme of the hearb

do declare it to be a kinde of thistle, although there hath beue great controuersie among the ancient phisitians, of the true description of this hearbe. And Ruellius, seemeth more exactly and better to iudge of this hearb and come nearer to a truth, who described the blessed Thistle to haue a big stalke and prickling, like to Endiue, with rough and crisped leaues, and bearing a yellowe floure, and delighteth to be sowen in a fat earth, in the garden.

The phisicke helpes.

The Blessed Thistle hath the nature and qualitie of opening the stopping of members, of peircing & causing vrine. This hearb in the eating, doth help the paines in the head & lungs, & causeth good hearing, & sharpneth the wit & memory, & putteth away giddines: also it comforteth the brain and sight, not only by eating, but also by anointing the eies therwith. And when the iuice of the herb can not be had, then may you vse the pouder, or the hearb it selfe dried, and stieped in water, & so wash the eies therwith. And the iuice dropped in the eies, dooth helpe the blood shotten in them: and the hearbe stayeth the bleeding at the nose and mouth, if it be applied to either place: and the pouder of the hearbe mixed with honny and eaten, doth cause the person easilier to spit forth fleame & grose humors, and it helpeth a weake stomacke and causeth an appetite to meate, and softneth the hart: also it consumeth euill blood & ingendreth good: and the hearb boyled in wine, and drunk, doth cause the person to sweat, but being boyled in water, & drunk, doth consume the euill humours and preserue the good. Further this hearb eaten, doth strengthen the palsie members, and healeth the blistred lungs. And the hearb boyled or drunk rawe with wine, doth breake the stone: and the hearbe boyled in the vrine of a healthfull man Childe, and drunke doth helpe the dropsie and plague, and breaketh all impostumes, and maistreth the canker, and falling sickne: and the pouder of this hearbe drunk, vnto the quantity of a dram, before twelue houres be past of the disease felt, doth both expell and heale the plague: and the downe comming of the floures, laid on

cuts

cuts and new wounds, doth heale them without paine. And the hearbe chawed in the mouth, doth cure the ſtinke of the breath: and the hearbe boyled in wine, and drunke hot, about a quarter of an houre before the comming of an Ague, and the patient afterward well couered with cloathes in the bed, doth helpe all Agues, both hot and cold: and the pouder of the hearb drunke with hot wine and the diſtilled water, recouers the patient in ſhort time: and againſt any poyſon receiued by the mouth, when the ſame happeneth, drink the pouder and hearbe, or the iuice of the hearbe, or the diſtilled water, and after couered with cloathes, ſweat well for the ſpace of three houres: Laſtly the pouder of the hearbe, either eaten or drunk, doth help the ſtitch of the ſide. Theſe hitherto of the properties of the hearbe named the bleſſed Thiſtle.

Of the ordring, and care of the hearb Wormwood.

Chap. 47.

VVOrmewood is an hearbe ſo well knowen through out England, that it needeth the ſmaller inſtruction of the forme of it: yet be there three kinds of wormewood, deſcribed both of Plinie and Dioſcorides. And the firſt is the Romaine Wormwood, which alſo of the Countrie is named Ponticke, in which the beſt groweth: and the leaues of the ſame the ancient Phiſitions vſed to miniſter in ſigs to Children, to abate the bitternes therof. And the ſecond is the Sea Worm wood, which alſo is named Siphinum, the ſeeds of which the Phiſitions appoint to the killing of wormes in the bodie: and of this they name them (at this day) the ſeeds againſt the wormes, or worme-ſeede. And the third is that which is named Santonicum, growing in Fraunce, beyond the Alpes. And this although it be leſſe then the others, yet it is far gentler in the bitternes: and the ſame wormewood alſo at this day, is ſowen in beds in many gardens, and the yong leaues alſo mixed in ſallets, vnto the great commoditie of the ſtomacke and liuer: and the wormwood ought to be gathered in the monthy of July at what time the ſeeds appear, and to be dryed in the ſhadow.

The Phisicke helps.

The wormewood is hot in the first degree, and drie in the third, astringent, and endued together with a bitter and sharpe qualitie, and the iuice of the hearbe is much hotter. Now the iuice being drunke for ten daies together vnto the quantity of foure drams at a time, and tempred with Suger, doth helpe the laundize, the water betweene the skin, and driueth forth many noysome humors of the Liuer and milt. And the wormewood doth comfort both the stomacke, and moueth an appetite vnto meat, and helpeth also those diseases proceeding of a stopping, like as the dropsie, & such like diseases: and it killeth the wormes in the belly, and doth mightily expell them, by wearing a plaister prepared after this manner: First take foure ounces of wormewood, halfe an ounce of *Euphobium*, one ounce of the Harts horne burnt, and to these mixe an ounce of a Hare gaule, and hony, which prepare in plaister-forme, and apply vnto the belly: and he which is sicke of an Ague a long time, let him drinke the iuice of Wormewood tempered with Suger, which dooth helpe the Ague in short time after: and if any be so pained with the head-ache, that he cannot sleepe nor rest, let him cause wormewood to bee finely bruised and boyled well in water, and put after into a fine linnen cloath, apply the same gently about the head, and it will both remoue the beating paines, and cause the patient to sleep soundly: and boiled in wine, and drunke each day vnto the quantity of four ounces at a time, doth preserue the person, that the bloud putrifieth not in the bodie: and the Oyle of wormewood dropped in the eares, doth restore the hearing. And wormewood boiled in vineger, doth amend the euill sauour of the mouth, if it be washed therewith: and the drinking thereof dooth put away the swellings of the milt: and wormewood boyled in oyle Oliue, and annointed about the brest, doth both helpe the weakenes of the stomacke, and the mallice of the Liuer. And the iuice of wormewood, boyled with the iuice of Borage, and the flowres of Centurie, in Goats whay and drunke doth help those diseased of the Ague, and griefs of the milt.

And

And wormewood sodden in Lie, with Sothernwood, dooth helpe the sheading of the haires. Item for rawnes of the stomack, take wormwood, & hearb grace, of each a like waight: and to these mix a little pepper, beating them together, and boiling them in wine, drink of the same, which doth greatly comfort the stomacke. & purgeth it. And worm-wood laid among clothes, doth driue away moths: also the often smelling vnto worm-wood prrcureth sleepe, or laynig the same vnder the bolster, the party not knowing therof. These hitherto of the properties of wormewood.

Of the ordering, care and secrets of Sothernwood. Chap: 48.

OF the sothernwood be two kinds, as plinie and Dioscorides write, the one growing on the plaine, the other on the mountaine: and so the one is taken to be the female, and the other the male: both hauing a bitternes like to the wormwood. And now the female (after Dioscorides) shooteth vp in stalke like a kind of tree, and for that named of many, the little Cipresse tree, bearing little white leaues about the small bowes or branches, and those finely parte, like the sea wormwood, and hauing big yellowe berries in the top, whose sauor yeldeth somwhat vnpleasant and bitter in taste. And the male beareth not so white leaues, being branched with a smal seede and leafe like to the fennell, shorter of groth, bearing in the top a yellowish floure, and hauing the like berries, hanging thicke together on the top, and sauouring somwhat strong, and with one root growing neere in the earth. And neither of them can abide the long colde of the winter, but that it withereth, and is much harmed also by the long heate of the Sunne when the same spreadeth it selfe in the top. And Theophrastus writeth that it better prospereth, being set with the roote, or in braunches slipped off, then sowne in the seed.

The Phisick helpes.

The Sothernwood is hot in the first degree, and dry in the second: but *Ægineta* writeth, that it heateth & drieth in the third degree & hath the vertue of digesting, and cutting asunder although it doth a little bind: and now the Sothernwood burned and brought to pouder, & tempred with the

Oyle

Oyle of Raddishe, and with the same annointing the balde place of the head, do cause the haire to grow: and the iuce of the hearb mixed with oyle of Dill, dooth the like, in causing haire to grow in any place of the body: and the same hearb doth dissolue impostumes and flegmaticke humours, being boiled in a pot with the kernels of Quinces, and so applied. and the iuice pressed out of the Sothernwood, and drunke with wine dooth defend the person from the apoplexie: the iuice anointed on palsie members, dooth helpe them. And the Sothernwood boiled with oyle Oliue, and annointing the head therewith, doth take away the vntemperate coldnes of the head. The hearb boyled with parcely and suger, and drunke, doth both breake and expell the stone of the kidneis and bladder: and the oyle of Sothernewood annointed beneath the nauil, doth cause vrine: and the hearbe drunke in wine, helpeth against poisons, and against the biting of venemous beastes or wormes: and if any often drinke of the root of this hearb, it killeth the wormes in the body: also if the iuce be mixed with a little milke, and drunk, it dooth the like: against the colde griefes of the Lungs, and breast, this hearbe is profitably giuen, being sodden before with Isope in wine and water, and sweetned both with Licoras and Suger: and the hearbe bruised with oyle and salt together, and laid on the Pulses of the hand, is a profitable remedie against the Ague: and a branch of the hearbe (as *Plinie* writeth) laid vnder the bolster, doth mooue the desire to the veneriall act. It doth also greatly auaile against al bewitchings, which by eating therof is hindred. These hitherto of the properties of the Sothernwood.

Of the ordering, care and secrets of the hearbe Sage. Chap. 49.

THe hearbe Sage is so common, that the same is growing in euery Garden, and is either sowen in the seedes, or set in small slippes broken off, and weathed at the end, in the moneth of October, Nouember, February and March, in well laboured and dressed ground, and desireth also to be couered about with Bucke ashes, for so it prospereth, and

commeth the faster forward, and ioyeth besides in a Sunnie and open place, although it may well abide the colde of all the winter through, without any couer or defence ouer it.

And it ioyeth to be set by the hearbe Rue or Hearbgrace, and not in dunged earth, but in colde earthy mixed with clay.

The Phisicke helpes.

Sage helpeth in the first degree, and drieth in the second, and the leaues (for the vse of medicine) may well bee kept for a yeare, and now the sage being sodden in wine, & drunk doth stay the excessiue flixes: and the tearmes staying, it draweth them down, but to much running, it stayeth them. And the Sage sodden with Worme-wood, and then drunk, dooth stay the bloody flixe: and the leaues and stalkes sodden together and drunke, doth prouoke vrine, and the tearmes. And the sage sodden in wine, and either drunk or applied plaister-wise, doth help the palsie, and sod in water helpeth the gout and falling sicknes, & especially the dropping of the vrine, and being drunk, & applyed plaisterwise to the blley, & a fomentation applyed with the licour of the decoction of the hearb, doth help the strangurie or bloudy flixe, and clenseth the matrix. And the sage boyled in wine with the herb named *Taxus Barbatus*, and sitting ouer the hot broth of the same decoction on a close stoole, dooth so send vp the fundament fallen down. The iuice of Sage mixxed with hony, and washing filthy woundes therwith, doth so cleanse them, and the leaues and stalks sodden in wine & washing with the same, doth helpe the itch of the priuities: and sitting ouer the hot broth of the decoction of the hearb doth take away the itch about the fundament, and the Sage water (distilled at the time of bearing the floures) drunke morning and euening, vnto the quantity of two or three ounces at a time, doth amend the defaults of the Liuer, putteth away the cough, and sendeth forth the dead yongling, and this water doth greatly helpe shrunke and astonished members, if they be bathed therewith. This water drunke, dooth help the paines of the sides, the shaking of the hands, and the palsie, and the like if they be bathed with the water.

And the water drunk with wine, doth procure an appetite to meat, and strengthneth the stomacke, and womens places, and the same water drunke morning and euening, vnto the quantitie of three or four ounces at a time, doth breake any inward impostum, comforteth the braine, and taketh away the distilling of the head, comforteth a hot liuer, and putteth away frenzines, and the water of sage, with peacocks dung, dooth stay the fresh bleeding wound, beeing bound about with mosse or Cotten. These hitherto of the properties of the hearb Sage.

Of the ordering and care of the Purselaine. Chap. 50

PUrselaine may be sowne in any time and season in a manner: yet the same sooner springeth vp, when the warme season beginneth as in the Monthes of Aprill, May and June. And the seedes may either be sown alone in earth well mixed with pouder dust, or among other hearbes if you wil, for they will prosper and come vp by growing among Onions & leeks Also they desire to be sown in a fat ground, for by that means they grow and ware the bigger, and where the seeds shal once be sowne, there will they euerie yeare after come vp of their owne accord, especially being suffered to growe to a big turffe and ripenes. The Purselaine is much harmed by a long drought vnlesse it be otherwise holpē with the often watering in that season. And note that the Purselaine growing vnder the shadow of trees will come to no turffes.

The Phisicke helpes.

Purselaine is cold in the third degree, and moist in the second, and the fresh and greene more allowed then the dry which hath then little vertue. And now the eating of the greene Purselaine doth helpe a hot stomacke, and the swelling of the mouth of the stomack: and the Purselaine boyled & holden in the mouth, doth cease the paine of the teeth and a plaister made of Purselain, & laid on hot vlcers where it is found that the matter in them putrifieth, doth helpe the same, and the like: if the impostume shall be hot, and that it wandreth from one member to another, and the Purslaine taketh away the vlcers of the head, if the same be brused & tempe-

tempered with wine, and the head washed therewith.

And the often eating of it raw, doth fill the stomack with clammie humors, but eaten raw with vinegar, dooth put away the burning ague, and brused with Barly meale, and after applyed hot to the stomacke, dooth qualifie the heate therof, and the eating of Purslaine dooth soone slay the monthly courses without harme, and the Purslaine brused and mixed with barly Flowre, & the same laid plaisterwise doth ease the paines of the head, quallifieth the heat of the eyes, slaieth the flixe of the belly, and especially the bloudy scouring, and strengthneth besides the raines and bladder, and the iuce drunke doth help the burning ague, killeth the wormes in the belly & helpeth the spitting of blood in the body, and against the costiuenes of the belly, seeth the hearb in water with prunes, and the same eate together, and after drinke the water: and *Auicen* writeth, that the Purslaine dryeth vp waters of propertie, if they be annoynted with the iuce therof, and the hearb brused and laid plaisterwise, doth helpe the holy fire, and the hearbe holden vnder the tongue, doth put away thirst. These hitherto of the properties of Purslaine.

Of the ordering and care of Penny-royall. Chap. 51

PEnny-royall is an hearb well knowne to all persons, and loyeth in the growing with Pep and Mints, but the female weareth the greater effect (as Plny writeth) and beareth a purple floure, but the male a white floure. And now Palladius willeth the Penny-royal to be set in the beginning of March, in earth well laboured and dressed, without any dung at all, and rather in a moist place where it most loyeth.

The Phsicke helps.

The Penny-royall is hot and drie in the third degree, & doth also heat & decoct mightely, so that it maketh the person eating & drinking therof, the easier to cast & spit forth the clammie matter from the lungs and brest, and Penny-royall is then to bee gathered, when it beareth the floures, for that they may after be kept for two yeares, and against the itch of the body, boyle the Penny-royall in faire water,

and washing the itching places therewith, it doth speedilye heale them, and sodden in wine and drunke, it dooth send downe the monthly courses, and the like the after burden: also being bruised with hony and salt, and that laid plaisterwise, doth helpe the palsie and broken members. And the Penny-royall bruised and eaten with hony, dooth helpe the hardnes of fetching the breath, and against the gripings of the bowelles, take two partes of wine and a third part of the hearb boyled together, and so drinke the same, and hee that is dayly mooued to much sleepe, let him take the fresh Penny royall, and holde the same vnder the tongue, and in the mouth, and thus often vsing the fresh hearb, shal so driue away desire of sleepe, and the pouder of the Penny-royall drunke in wine for two daies together at night going to bed doth helpe the greefe of the liuer and lunges. And the pouder of the hearbes or seedes taken in an Egge, doth help the rawnes of the stomacke and the casting of it, and if any by ouer much bleeding is bereft of minde: let this hearb be applyed with vinegar to the nostrils, and it will both refresh and restore the person, and the teeth robbed with the pouder of this hearb, doth put away the greef and paine of them and the hearbe bruised and tempered with Saffron and annointed, doth help the euill vlcers of the body, and especially those which arise about the nailes of the fingers, & the hearb bruised & applied plaisterwise, doth asswage the swelling of the milt, and drunke warme in wine, dooth help the dropping of the bladder, and the same wine with the hearb boyled in oyle, & applied to the belly, dooth work the same effect, and the Penny-royall sodden in wine and applyed twice or thrice to the nostrils, doth helpe the rume and distilling of the head. And the wine of the decoction of the hearb and dry figges drunk, doth help the colde cough, proceeding of calamitie and watry humors. These hitherto of the properties of Penny-royall.

Of the ordering, care, and secrets of the Artichocks. Chap. 52.

THe Artechocke groweth in the head like vnto the Pine-apple, which ought to bee sowen or set in the earth in March:

March: Palladius willeth the earth before to be well dunged and laboured, for that it best inioyeth in a fat ground. And the seedes set in fatt ground, doe greatly availe against the casting vp of the Mole and other beastes, in that they cannot so easily make holes in the ground. And Palladius also willeth, that when your beds be thus dressed and prepared in a readinesse, that then to set the seedes in the earth halfe a foote a sunder, and this especially ought to be done in the encrease of the Moone: and that holding the seedes with three of your fingers you set them so deepe in the earth, (as vnto the first ioynts) and cover them lightly with earth, and water them often if a hot season insue, for by that means they send forth both tenderer and fuller fruits, as Varro writeth. And when the young plants be somewhat sprung vp, then ought they dayly to bee weeded, and their withered leaues plucked away and to bee well dunged about with store of ashes, after the minde of Columella: for that the same kinde of dung (as he writeth) is aptest and best agreeth to this hearbe. And beware you set not the seedes turned vp side down in the earth, for on such wise they will send forth feeble, crooked, and very small Artichockes, as writeth Palladius. And the Artichockes will grow without prickles, if that the sharpe endes bee prest downe or made blunt by rubbing them on a stone, before the setting in the earth. And certaine writers affirme, that if the vpper skin of the roote of the Lettuce be pared off, and that the root afterward be shred into verie small peeces, and that into each peece cut a seede be put, and so covered in the earth, of such a depth aboue said, which after will grow without prickles: and they will grow sweete and pleasant, if that the seeds (three daies before) be steeped in any sweet smelling licour, & after the drying in the ayre, set so deep in the earth as aboue is said. For by that meanes they send forth Artichockes of the same taste (which the licour was) in which the seeds were soked: and thus they will sauour and taste of the Baies, if that you steepe the seedes with Bay-leaues, or put of the seeds into Bayberries, and set them into the ground. And a practise may be vsed (if you will) in the ordering on such wise all o-

their seedes. And to make Artichockes growe sweete in taste, infuse the seedes before, in either milke with hony, or in water with suger, or else in pleasant wine: and after the drying, set them orderly in the earth, and many doe couer the leaues well with earth in the beginning of winter, to cause them to turne white, and take away the bitternesse, and the better to serue with meats in winter time. And Palladius affirmeth of experience, that the yong plants of the Artichocks set among yong wheate in the end of October to growe vp with the same will the better prosper, then by the setting of them in beds alone. And certaine ancient men will, that the whole plantes be plucked vp, with the endes of the rootes left in the earth or cut off in the ends with some sharpe hook, and that these roots so cut or broken off, be dipped in dung, and set againe in earth, well laboured and dressed with old dung a foot a sunder for the better increase of the plants. And if needs so require, for the heat of the season, then to water the plants, vntil they haue sufficiently taken root in the ground, and the artichockes are not to be gathered altogether, for that they ripe not all at one time, but ripen alwaies the one after the other, and they also are then to be gathered, when they haue as yet flours in the nether part, round about like vnto a Garland, and not when all the flowres be fallen off, for then they bee worser, and euerie yere the yong plants ought dayly to be plucked vp from the old, for feare of hindring the yeeld of the old, and the young new set in other places further a sunder: and there bee some Authors which will, that the young plants bee plucked vp, with some part of the roote. And those plants which you preserue for seeds, ought first to be cleansed from al the yong ones growing about, & couered ouer with some potshard or Barke, for that the seedes through the burning of the Sun & showres of the raine corrupting, doe vtterly perish and come to nothing and the Mice and Rats doe greatly couet to feed on the roots of the artichockes, and if they once taste of the rootes, or otherwise be mooued to come vnto them, then gather they after in great companies vnto the place, and that coming a great way of, so much do they delight in the sauour and taste

of

of those rootes. Wherefore to auoid the resort and comming of them vnto the rootes, then take (as Varro willeth) either swines dung lapping the same about the roots, or els fig ashes, strawing them in like sort about the rootes, which so will driue them away.

The Phisicke helps.

The artichock eaten raw, doth amend the sauour of the mouth, and the prickle partes like to the Pine apple kernels, sodden tender, and boyled after with butter and vinegar & seasoned with salt, be greatly commended: & some delight in eating of them rawe, and finde a pleasantnes, in the eating if they be prepared with pepper, salt, and the fine pouder of Coliander seedes strawed vpon. And stieped in wine, or rather sodden in wine, & eaten, doth not onely moue or cause vrine, but procure the veneriall act, and the same sodden in water & eaten, doth strengthen the stomacke, & procure a more earnest desire both of man & woman, by eating both at one time of the same. And *Galen* affirmeth, the artichock to be then hard of disgestion, and hurtfull to the stomacke, when the same is growne vnto the sheading quite of all the floures of the head, although some write when it commeth to the bearing of floures, at what time the riper ones (as they write) doe not onely wax dry of moisture, but hard and rough of skin, and also haue more plentie of the cholleriek iuice: and of this they are rather to be sodden then rawe, & yet the yong ones being full of iuce may safely be eaten raw being prepared in the like order as aboue is taught. These hitherto of the properties of the Artichocks.

Of the ordering, care, and secrets of Leekes. Cap. 53

LEekes ought to be sowne in a battle grounde, and especially in a plaine low place, as writeth Palladius, and that the beds bee leuell, high cast vp, well labboured, and orderly banged. And the vnset Leekes after two monethes sowing, ought to be cut as they grow, for so (as Columella writeth) they wax the bigger, and continue the longer. And the better also they will prosper, if after euerie remouing, and setting againe, the blades bee cut: and how often they bee cut, so often

ten

ten to be watered and dunged. And this also learne, that the bigger the heads growe so much the further distant, as commonly foure fingers a sunder they ought to be set, and after the growing, the blades then to be cut, also, the often watering dunging, plucking vp the weedes growing neere to them, and the often remouing doe greatly further the increase. And when you mind to haue the heads of the Leekes grow bigge, then before the setting againe, cut away all the small berrie roots, & vnder the heads lay either pot-shards, or oyster shels betweene the heads and the earth, and after couer each head so ordered with earth, and by that meanes the heads will grow the bigger, so that you doe not then water thē, after the minde (of the Greeke) Sotion. And Palladius writeth of Leeks on this wise, that when the leekes be grown a finger bignes, and that the blades be halfe cut away, that then yee set the heades againe in new and soft cow-dung, foure fingers a sunder each from other. And when the Leekes haue gotten some strength of roote in the earth, then with your forked dibble, put vnder the head, loose it so in the earth, that the head may so seeme to hang in the earth, and in the head by that meanes finding such large emptines vnder it, will after grow out, and fill that emptinesse.

And further, if you desire onely to haue vnset Leekes, then sow your seedes thicker together: but if big in the head, then sow your seedes the thinner, and dayly in a maner weed them and feed them with soft cow dung. And the the seeds also may be sowne in the moneths of March, April, May, and all June: But remoued and set againe (after the minde of Palladius) in the month of July, August, September, and October, will well serue the moneths of March and April following, being as aboue saide new dunged in the setting, and watered. And both the Greeke Sotion, Columella, and Palladius do write that if many seedes of the Leekes be tyed vp together, and set in prepared earth, & soon after watered, then will al the sēdes in an heape together grow vp into one meruailous big Leeke, right wondrous to behold. And this practise may bee tryed by the seedes of any other plant. And like vnto the aboue-saide

may

may be caused, if that into the head of a Leeke you put a rape-seede (the hole before being bored with a wooden pricke, for that killeth the head) and then set orderly, as is aboue said, doeth grow into a marueilous bignes, as writeth the afore-said Palladius. Columella writeth, that the head of a Leeke bored with the pointe of a wooden pricke or stiffe Reede, or else by any other meanes, a hole opened with iron, and putting into the same hole a Gourd seede, in the stead of Rape seede, taught before, and ordring of the leeke (as is aboue said) will after grow into a marueilous bignes.

And there is yet an other way taught of certaine others, which is, that so many seedes be put into a thin Reede, as a man may aptly take vp with three of his fingers, and them set orderly into the ground, and of these seedes together will procéede the like big plant, as is aboue said. And Columella willeth that after the sowing your seedes, and that couered with earth, to tread the earth close vpon them with the foote, and to doe no other worke vnto them, vntill three daies be past, and in the fourth day to sprinckle your seedes with water, vnlesse they be in the meane time watered with raine, for by that meanes (saith he) they will sauour much better: and when in sowing or planting you mixe sand w̄ the earth, then will the Leekes growe and yeeld the plentifuller. And to take away the strong breath and smell of eating of Leeks, chawe then Cummine in thy mouth, and the same will take away the strong smell, although you had eaten a large handfull of the Leekes at one time. And Petrus Crescentius writeth, that the seedes of Leekes powred into wine, do not suffer the wine after to sower: but yet they restore vineger vnto the naturall taste and smell of wine, taking away by that meanes all the tartnes and sharpnes thereof. And Nero Cæsar so greatly commendeth vnset Leekes, that eating them euery day with oyle, will after cause a cleare voice to sing, either priuately or publiquely. And lastly, this by experience is found, that the Leeke commeth vp after the eightenth daies sowing, and groweth vnto two yeres end, and after that falleth to seeding, and so dieth.

The Physicke helps.

The Leeke of the Garden drieth in the second degree, and heateth in the third, and the seedes may well bee kept three yeares. The Leeke bruised and mixed with salt, and that laid on euil pushes, doth heale them: and being brought vnto pouder, and tempered with oyle of Roses and vineger, & dropped into the eares, doth put away the pains of them: and the selfe same taken, doth helpe the tooth-ach: but the Garden Leeke by often eating, doeth harme both the stomacke and eies: and much more the wilde Leeke. The often eating of the Leeke doth fill the body with winde, and therefore it ought twice to be sodden in water, before the eating with meat, and so the malice of it is qualified. And the Leeke also draweth downe the tearmes, causeth vrine, and procureth a superfluous heat. The iuce of the Leeke drunke with womans milke, doeth helpe an old cough, and the blisters of the lungs: and the same drunke doth helpe the spitting of blood. And for the casting or vomiting vp of olde bruised blood, take two drammes of the iuice of the Leeke, with the like quantitie of fine pouder of the gaule, and Olybanum, mixing them together, which after drink, & it doth greatly helpe: and the same mixture applied vnto the nostrils, doeth stay the bleeding of the nose. And eating the Leeke raw, doeth cause vomiting, and is contagious, yet the same putteth away drunkennes. And a plaster made of the Leek with hony, and that laid on broken and spoiled members, doeth asswage the swelling, and consume the clotted blood. And against the paines of the hips, drink the iuice of the Leeke, and it will ease the same. And the iuice doth especially heale such wounds which be cold and putrified, if the same be powred into them, and eateth away rotted flesh of the wounds. And the iuice mixed with the rootes of white Lilies, and anointed on the hips, doth put away the pain of them. And the often eating of the Leek doth cause the head ache, burdeneth the stomacke, causeth thirst, and inflameth the blood: and the iuice mixt with salt, and that laid on fresh wounds, doth vnclose them. And the eating of the leek pro-

cureth

cureth a desire to the venerial act. And the iuice of the Leek drunk in wine, doth both help the old cough & the dropsie. And against the paines of the head, take two partes of the iuice, with a third part of hony, that drop either into the nostrils or eares, and it will greatly help. And the vnset Leekes sodden in good white wine, with May butter, and that laid plaster wise on the belly, so hot as the patient may wel abide it, & at the cooling of that, apply another hot plaster, & this do the third and fourth time together if need require, which without doubt will greatly ease the cholick. And the water of the rootes distilled in Iune, drunk morning and euening, vnto the quantity of two ounces at a time, doth greatly help such as spit blood, and also helpeth barren women by often drinking thereof: and the water stayeth the great bleeding at the nose, if fine cotten be dipped in water and put vp into the nostrils And the same water drunke, doth helpe the costiue belly & the pain of the hips, purgeth the kidnies and bladder, causeth vrine, and sendeth forth the stone. And the water speedily helpeth wounds, if they be washed morning and euening with it. And the same water doth greatly helpe vnto the exulceration and fracture of womens priuie places which sometimes hapneth after the birth of big children, if they be bathed or washed with the same water morning & euening. These hitherto of the properties of Leeks.

Of the ordering, care, and secrets of the Garden Onion. Chap. 54.

THe Onion through the bignesse of the head, and number of cartilages, with the which the body is included, was of the ancient Husbandmen so named. And now, as touching the condition of the ground and manner of sowing the seeds, you shal vnderstand that the same ought to be done in a fat ground, laboriously digged vp, dunged and watered, and the earth also neare red, as writeth the Greeke Sotion. Also the ground where you minde to sowe your seedes, ought to be cast vp, and lie open all the winter through, that it may so be nipped and bitten of the frost, and the weeds killed and after that to be dunged and the earth cast leuel into beds,

in which doing, plucke vp and cast away all maner of weeds and rootes that you can finde. And when you haue thus handled and ordred your earth, then in the moneth of March in a calme and faire day, the wind blowing out of the South or East, sowe orderly your seedes, with the seede of the herbe Sauery among them, for so they prosper the better, as writeth Pliny. And when they come vp, you must diligently weede them for three or foure daies together: and as Palladius willeth, your beds ought to be thrice digged vp finely, and plaine raked ouer before the sowing of the seedes. And now after the yong plants be sprung vp, and that you would haue your Onions to growe bigge in the heads, and not to beare seedes, then must you breake off the greene blades, that the iuice may so goe to the rootes, or els breake off and cut away both the blades and small hairie rotes, before the setting againe in the earth, for so they will grow the bigger in the heads, as writeth the Greeke Sotion. And this learne, that the seedes sowen in the wane of the mone, come vp both small and sower: but those seeds sowen in the increase of the mone, spring vp the bigger and sweeter. This also is not to be ouerpassed, that in all kinds of Onions, the longer in fashion is sowrer then the round, and the reddest sowrer then the white: and the drie then the greene: and the rawe then the sodden. And farre bigger will the heads be, if after their remouing they be set againe into beddes lying open for twentie dayes before, and that well turned in with dung, and so long dried, vntill the moisture be almost spent, after the minde of the learned Sotion. And some plucke off the vpper skinne, leauing them bare, and so setting them againe in the earth: And thus setting them againe, they ought to bee placed a hand breadth and somewhat more alunder, that they may the better prosper. And those which you mind to eate before the full ripenes, ought to be set in beds, where Cucumbers or Gourds, and Mellons be, and in their growing to be often digged about, watered and weeded, for so they prosper the better, as writeth Palladius.

And when they bee growen and shotte vp into high stems,

stems, then must their weake bodies be staied vp with small props, lest their long small neckes bent much downe-ward with blasts of winde, and the heads also often knocking or beating together through blowing of the windes, should so shake forth and leese much seede. And the time also of gathering the heads, as Columella and Palladius teach, when the sædes appeare blacke of colour. And further, Sotion the Greeke writeth, that the Onions will last a long time, if that before their laying or hanging vp, they be laide or put for a season in warme water: or els, as Pliny willeth, to be infused in warme and salty water for a season, and after laid to drie in the Sunne vntill they be thorow drie, and then couered with Barley straw: and in such wise they ought to be laid in the strawe, that the one touch not the other. And some hang them in the smoke and Chimney, neare vnto the heate of the fire, and doe likewise continue a long time. And to make Onions grow of a marueilous bignes in the beds, close the sædes of them with the sædes of the Gourd in the best dung, and mixe the earth diligently with them in the putting into the earth. And you may cause them also to growe of the same bignesse, if that raising vp the earth about them, you doe loose the earth hollow vnder the heads, as before is taught of the ordering of Leekes. Also you may cause the like heads, if boring certaine holes, you put into them some sædes of the Gourd, setting them so into the earth. And there be also husbandmen, which will the sædes of the Onion to bee then gathered, when as the pillings of the head be halfe drie, and that they be after thorowly dried in the Sun. And here learne, that certaine ancient writers (as Pliny and others) will, that both the Onions and Garlike should be sowen neer to sweet smelling flowres, to cause them sauour and smell the sweeter. And those Onions which you minde to plucke vp, to keep a long time, ought to be done in the waning or decrease of the Moone.

And further learne, that Palladius willeth the young Onions to be set againe in February, but sowen in the seedes, both in the spring and Haruest. And yet many ancient husbandmen

bandmen willeth, that the seedes be sowen in the moneths of December, Januarie, Februarie, and March, either alone or in beds with other hearbes, and after they be somewhat come vp, then to bee remooued and thinner set, as a span asunder: and if the earth in the same yeare shall not be dunged, then the sowing time following it ought to be dunged for the better increase and plentifuller growing. And those Onions be counted best, which be set in the moneth of August, for that in the yere following, they may so send forth their seedes: and those be counted worst, which be set greene in the Lent time. And to conclude, those Onions be thought to keepe the better and longer time, which bee gathered and plucked vp in the increase of the Moone, and being then a calme and cleare day, and after laid to drie in a shadowie place. And the seedes may well be kept for the space of one whole yeare.

The Physicke helps.

Onions be hot and moist in the third degree, and heate also in the fourth degree, as witnesseth *Galen*. And the often eating of the raw Onions, doeth cause a rough throat, winde in the stomacke, and the head-ache. And the Onion mixed with honie, doth take away the griefe of an euill stomacke: & yet the eating of them doth harme the members, for that they drie ouermuch the moisture of the body: but tempered with vineger, and laid on piles, they do then open them. And the eating of them, doeth soften the bellie, and causeth thirst. And the iuice of the Onion mixed with honie, doth amend the sight, and the pinne and the webbe, if the same be often dropped into the eies. And against paines of the breast, take the Onions rosted vnder embers, & eat them morning and euening, which by that meanes causeth easie spitting vp of humours, and looseth the breast: and in the same manner it putteth away swelling, and purgeth the stomacke. And the Onion bruised, and mixed with salt and hony, and that laid on warts, doth make them fal off by the rootes. And the Onions bruised with vineger, if a scabbed skin be washed with the same, doe heale and make the skin faire.

faire. And the eating of them raw, doth cause loathsomnes vnto the stomacke, and yeeldeth a strong sauour out of the mouth. And the iuice of it drawne vp into the nostrils, doth purge the head. And against the biting of a mad dog, take the iuice of the Onion, with the iuice of Rew, or herbe Grace, and hony, and with the same anoint the place. And the often eating of Onions, doth harme the cholericke, for that they cause them to be both hotter and drier: but the flegmatick persons the Onions seldome harme, for that they cut asunder, and consume the superfluous humours in them. And the iuice of the Onion mixed with Capons grease, and anointed on raw heeles, or sleepie gaules, doth soone heale them. And the iuice dropped into mattery and running eares, and after seething them in salt broth with other good spices, is then profitable to the stomacke, and cause a better nourishment. And the Onion bruised with honie, and that laid plaster wise on any wounds, doth heale them. And the yong tender Onions eaten with hony do maintain health. And the Onion rosted in the hot embers, and eaten with oyle, doth helpe the cough. And the iuice mixed with womans milke, and dropped into the eares, doeth helpe the paine and noise of them. And the iuice of the Onion drunk with the iuice of Fenell, doth helpe the dropsie, and being drunke with Rew and honie, doth greatly helpe the heauy sleepines and forgetfulnes. And the iuice also mixt with raisons and figs, and that laid plaster wise on impostumes, doth both breake and draw them. And the eating of the Onion doth cause fearfull dreames, especially to such lately cropen out of a sicknes. And lastly, the Onion accustomed to be eaten morningly, and that yong and tender, both of labouring and husbandmen, doth greatly maintaine their health, and preuaileth the like to them against the infection of the aire, by eating them with salt and bread, for so they lesse harm the head. These hitherto of the properties of Onions.

Of the ordering, care, and secrets of the Garlike. Chap. 55.

The lesser Garlike must be sowen or set in the rieges of beddes in the Moneth of September, and November, and

and raised somewhat high, that it may the lesse bee harmed with Winter waters. And therefore you shall make sundry little furrowes in your beds, like to such which be commonlie made in the fields, to auoide the moisture and raine. And set the Cloues (plucked off from the heads) foure fingers asunder, and not deeper then the middle ioint, that they may the better come vp. And when three leaues are sprung vp, then weed about them: for the oftner you do weed them, the bigger they will ware in the heads. And if you will haue them big in the heads, then tread them flat down, after ỹ fastning & tying together of the greene blades, which you must do, when as the blades be somwhat come vp, and not growne vnto a stalke, that so the iuice may returne to the heads. And Palladius willeth, that Garlike bee sowen either in Ianuarie, or Nouember, in a white ground, well digged and labored, but not dunged, and in a warme day, and that the earth be then indifferent drie: for by that meanes will the seeds prosper the better, and come forward. And yet Pliny writeth, that the seedes sowen doe slenderly come vp: for that in the first yeares growth, they bee no bigger then the Leekes in the heads: and in the second yeare they come diuided: but in the third yeare, the heads be growen to perfect bignesse. And further, there be certaine others which will, that the seedes of the Garlike be sowen in the moneths of September, October, Februarie, and March: and in hot countries in the moneth of December. And Palladius writeth, that if any happen to be left in the earth when they bee ripe, then those remaining doe after renue both in the rootes and leaues, and send forth their seedes in the yeare following, which may bee sowen and bring forth Garlike. And besides, Palladius willeth, that when the Cloues bee thus set on the ridges of the beddes in white earth, well laboured and dressed without Dung, and that they be shot vp in stems, to tread the blades flat to the earth, and keeping them downe, that the blades shoot not into an height, which by the often treading of them downe, will cause the iuice to returne vnto the Cloues, and make a mightie head. Moreouer, Pliny, Sotion the Greeke,

Palladius,

Palladius, and diuers other antient men do write, that if the cloues of the Garlike be set in the earth when the Moone is vnder the earth, and the heads plucked vp when she likewise is set vnder the earth, that then the strength of the sauour of them will be so small, that the breath of the eaters of them shall scarcely be felt. And not vnlike to this doth Columella write, that if the cloues be set in the beds, ỹ moone being then vnder the earth, and the heads plucked vp at the change of the moone, that the sauor of them wilbe greatly abated. And the Greek Sotion writeth, that you may make the Garlik heads sauor swéter, if that you mixe the kernels of Oliues braised with the cloues and afterward set them together in the earth, or gently breaking flat the sharpe ends of the cloues, you set them so into the earth: or els in the setting, you mixe the Lées of the Oyle Oliue with the cloues of the Garlike. And Didimus writeth, that the strong sauour gotten by eating of Garlike, is put away by the onely eating of a grene Beane or two. And others write, that the rote of the Bétes rosted vnder hot embers, and eaten: doth put away the strong breath and smell of the Garlike. And likewise certaine late practitioners doe write, that if the eaters of Garlike do after eate grene Parcely, that the same doth shortly after take away the lothsome smell thereof. And many of the antient writers affirme, that the Garlike heads will continue the longer, and serue the better to vse, if that they be afterwards either buried or couered in Chaffe, or hanged vp in the smoke. Likewise there be some which will, that the heads of Garlike be a little while keped in warme salt water, and after to be dried and hanged vp or couered, which so doth cause them to last the longer. But in this or that manner vsed, they become (after the setting) barraine of yéld for the most part. And sufficient it is, that the Garlike heads be dried ouer the fire, that they may not spring or growe afterward.

And Pliny writeth, that those heads of Garlike be of a sower taste, which haue the most cloues: and he also affirmeth, that the Garlike heads will haue no stronger sauour

or smell after the sething, then the Onions haue after their sething. And Palladius writeth, that the Garlik heads ought then to be plucked vp, when the stalkes ware drie and feble: and this especially do in the wane of the moone, & in a cleare day and drie season. And Democritus in his husbandry writeth, that if you mind to driue the smal birds from the eating and spoiling of your fruits, and not to come neere them, then take Garlike heads, and hang sundry on diuers branches of the trees.

The Physicke helps.

Garlike is hot and drie in the fourth degree, and hath the vertue of consuming, dissoluing, and expelling poyson. And against the biting of any venemous beasts and worms, take Garlik, bruising the same, and after apply the same plaster-wise on the bite: and this is named the husbandmans triacle. And against worms in the belly, take Garlike, with the iuice of Parcely and Mintes, which mixe with a little vineger and pepper, & making therof a sauce, vse to eat of the same with bread or meat. And for the cholicke and paines of the rains, seeth Garlike in wine and oile, which applying plaster-wise on the belly, & round about the root of the yard, doth greatly helpe the same. And by eating of Garlike, a man may the safelier go into a suspected aire, and by stinking places, because the strong sauor of it (for the season) doth put away all other noisome sauors and stincks. And a Garlike cloue holden in the mouth, doth cease the paine and ach of a tooth, if the same proceed of a colde cause.

And *Syrapio* writeth a marueilous matter, that although the eating of Garlike doth harm the whole and perfect sight of the eies, yet he affirmeth, that the moisture of it doeth comfort a dull sight. And here learne, that the Garlike hath certaine euill properties, which be these: it maketh inflammation, drieth and harmeth the stomacke, and causeth thirst, and laide to the skin (in any place) it raiseth vp blisters, if it lieth twelue houres space, and therfore the often eating of it doth harme the cholerick, in that the Garlike doth inflame them, and drieth the whole body, especially in a hot season, and engendreth

gendreth beside the lepriein them, causeth also frenzinesse, hurteth the sight, and moueth the head-ache. And in consideration hereof, the cholerick ought to take heed of the often eating of Garlike, and chiefly in the latter end of the Spring, the Summer, & hot season of the Harueſt, because it doth then sooner engender red choler, and increaseth adust matter: also it doth more harme being eaten raw, then sodden or rosted. And yet the eating of Garlike moderatly in the winter time, is right profitable to the flegmatick persons. And further, Garlike rosted vnder the hot embers, and bruised with figs and barrowes greace, and that applied plaster-wise, doth breake a cold impostume which is long ere it be ripe. And the garlik eaten putteth away the inward swelling of the body, and softneth and openeth impostumes (as abouesaid) and draweth forth the matter, and the head annointed with the iuice of Garlik, doth kill both the nits and lice. And the Garlik drunk with the decoction of the Organy doth also kill the nits and lice of the head. And the ashes of the Garlike mixed with hony, and that anointed on thin places of the head, doth helpe the shedding of the haire: and the same anointment amendeth the foulenes or filthines of the skin. And the ashes of Garlik doth help the vlcers open, by sprinkling them vpō: & the ashes of the Garlik wrought together with hony and May butter, and anointed on the grieued places, doth make the skin smooth, if the same be either infected with the scab, or leprie, so that the anointing be done after bathing in an hot house. And as the most Authors do write, the often eating of Garlik, doth greatly harm and dull the sight of the eies. And Garlik sodden and eaten, doth cause a cleare voice, helpeth an old cough, purgeth the cold breſt, and drieth vp the moisture of the stomacke. And the Garlike (with the leaues & all) sodden in wine & drunk, doth not only procure vrine, but moueth down the tearms, and draweth down also the after burthen, if the belly be anointed with the same. And a smoke also made of Garlike, may doe the like, if the woman sit ouer it, on a close chaire for the purpose. And the sauour of the Garlike, doeth driue

away all venemous wormes. And if any being stinged of an adder, doe eate of the Garlike, he shall not after be harmed of the stinging, and is also a good remedy against poyson. And Garlike sodden with vineger, and drunke with that & hony mixed together named Mulse: doeth after send forth the flatte and broad wormes, and many other venemous wormes crept into the belly. And Garlike sodden with oile Oliue, and annointed, doth asswage the swellings and other griefes of the bladder: and sodden with Centorie in wine, and drunke, doth helpe the dropsie gathered of a cold cause. And the Garlike bruised with the Coliander seedes, and so taken in wine, doth asswage the paines of the ioynts, and openeth the straitnesse of making water. And Garlike sodden with Beanes, being bruised & tempered with oile Oliue, or oyle of Poppy, and an ointment made of the same, with the which annointing the temples, do greatly help the headache. And the Garlike sodden, and after rosted drie, with Pellitory and Mastick, and brought to pouder, with which washing the mouth, doth greatly help the tooth-ache. And if a woman doubt of her being with childe, and smelleth not the sauour of the Garlike set by her bed side in the night, it doth then vndoubtedly declare that she is conceiued with child. And the eating of Garlike is good & profitable both to husbandmen and labourers which often eate cold meats, and meats of hard digestion. These hitherto of the properties of Garlike.

Of the ordering, care, and secrets of the great Garlike. Chap. 56.

The great Garlike, which some Authors name the Africa Garlike, and the Greekes Aphroscorodon, is far bigger of increase then our common Garlike. And now this Garlike doth Columella will to bee set on the ridges of beds, like vnto the former Garlike, and that out of one head many cloues bee broken off, which ought to bee done in a faire and calme day, in a white earth wel digged vp & dressed, without any dung, about the Calends of October & Nouember. And to make the heads of this Garlike to grow big, then order

order the Garlike blades that come vp, like as was taught of the other Garlike. And in the setting also of the cloues, remember to plant them, not only foure fingers asunder, but a finger deepe, & to rake the earth often ouer them in the growing vp, whereby the iuice may run to the root, and cause them to waxe the bigger in the heads. And to conclude, all other instructions necessarily to be vnderstanded about the further ordering of this great Garlike, may be learned in other afore taught.

Of the ordering, care, and secrets of the Radish. Chap. 57.

THe Radish roote is well knowen both vnto the rich and poore, so that as well the husbandmen as the Citizens doe (at this day) eate of the Radish, the same before being well scraped, cut into thinne round slices, and dipped in Water and Salt, the better procureth an appetite vnto meat.

And Columella willeth, that the seedes of the Radish be sowen in a wel dunged & laboured earth, and in the moneths of March, Aprill, & September. And after the rote be growen vnto some bignesse, then couer it ouer thicke with earth, for otherwise, by leauing it bare, that the Sunne and aire may worke on the rot, doth so cause the same to become hard and hollow, as writeth Pliny, which willeth the Radish to be sowen in a lose and moist earth, without dunging. And Palladius writeth, that the Radish in no wise agreeth to be sowen either in a sandy or graueiled ground: but he affirmeth it to ioy vnder a temperate aire, and to be sowen in beds, large asunder, and deep digged after a new raine, vnlesse the ground be sufficiently moist and watry of it selfe. And when the seeds be sowen, then ought they by and by after to be couered with fine earth, and no dung mingled nor cast vpon, but onely the chaffe of corne, although Columella contrary writeth. And Aristomachus willeth the leaues to be quite broken off, and pulled away in the winter, whereby the root may be the bigger in Summer. And the rote also will be the pleasanter in eating, if you breake off the leaues before it grow to a stalke, as Plinie writeth. And the smaller the leafe shall be, so much the

the swéter and pleasanter will the roote be. And to be also watered with salt water, it prospereth the better, as Pliny writeth: for that by the watering on this wise, the roote sendeth such bitternesse as then remaineth in the same. And to make your Radish taste swéet, then after the mind of Florentine, kéepe your séedes before, either in water and hony mixed together, or in the liquor of Raisons, or else in water and suger for two daies together, and after the drying againe, sow them so in the earth. And to make your Radish grow big, plucke away all the leaues, sauing a small stalke remaining, and after couer the same very thicke ouer with earth, as Palladius willeth. And the like affirmeth Pliny, if that a hole be made with a wooden dibble, and the same filled fiue fingers high with the chaffe of corne, and after the séeds mixed with dung and fine earth, it will after cause so great a roote grow, as was the bignes of the hole made. And the thin sowing of the seeds in the end of July, and vnto the middle of August, or else a little after, and wéeding them often after their comming vp, doth so cause them to grow the bigger in the roote. And they also ioy in open aire, but be much harmed by growing in shadowie places. And if such a drought doth happen, that you cannot aptly sow your séeds, then sow them the thicker together, in some moist and watery place.

And when the yong plants be well sprung vp, and strong in the earth, & that the ground be well moistned with showers, then may you remoue the yong plants, especially about the end of August, and vnto the middle of September. And set them after in the earth, well laboured and trimmed, for so they grow the pleasanter in eating. And Petrus Crescentius writeth, that the rots of the Radish dried, and those wrought into pouder, and after powred into a bigger glasse, or narrow mouthed pot glazed, ful of wine, and letting the same so stand couered for a few daies, wil after be turned into sharpe vinegar, which drunke daily, doth maruellously weare away, and consumeth the stones of the kidneis, and helpeth besides many other griefes of the body.

The Phyſicke helps.

The Radiſh is hot and drie in the third degree, but ſome write in the ſecond degree. And now the Radiſh eaten at ſupper, doeth digeſt the meate eaten, and heateth the ſtomack, and cauſeth alſo a ſtinking breath, if any ſleep by and by after the eating. And this roote is hurtfull vnto women with child, and therefore to be refrained in that ſeaſon. And the iuice of the roote anointed on olde vlcers, doeth both cleanſe and eat away the canker in them: and the ſame like worketh the pouder of the root. And the iuce of the Radiſh boiled with hony, and mixed with a litle vineger, and after ſtrained and drunk, doth help the quartaine ague, and ſtopping of the milt. And the root of the radiſh laid plaſter-wiſe doeth helpe the water betweene the skin, and ſuch diſeaſed with the hardnes and ſwelling of the milt. And the iuice of the roote drunke with the liquor of Raiſons, doth helpe the kings euil: and drunk with hony, doth put away the cough: and this being alſo drunk, helpeth ſuch which be ſtopped in the breſt, and draw the wind ſhort. And of this root is made an Oximel on this wiſe: firſt bruiſe the root ſomewhat, and infuſe them for two or three daies in vineger, and after put to the ſame a third part of hony, which ſtrained, drink therof, for this helpeth the quartaine and one day ague, vnles the ſame proceed of ſalt fumes. And if there be colde and vndigeſted humours in the ſtomacke, then ſteepe the oindes of the rootes of the Radiſh with hony and vineger mixt together, & of the ſame let the patient daily eat a good quantity, and after the ſame ſo eaten, drinke a draught of warme water, putting then your finger, or a feather dipped in ſallet oile into the throte, and this forthwith will procure you to caſt forth at any time, but the apteſt time is in the morning. And againſt the hardneſſe of the Milt and Liuer, ſeeth the hearbe alone in Oile and Wine, and apply the ſame plaſter-wiſe, and the ſame plaſter laide hot on the bottome of the bellie, neare to the root of the priuitie, doeth helpe the ſtrangury. And the water of the Radiſh diſtilled in September, drunk morning and euening, vnto the quantity of three

or foure ounces at a time, doth help the stone, causeth vrine, and clenseth also the raines, and the bladder: It doth clense the places also where the stones containe. And the same water drunke, doth helpe the kings euill, killeth the wormes of the belly, and helpeth the digestion of the stomack, and purgeth it of all clammy humors, and other matters which hinder digestion, and it openeth also euery stopping of the inner members and veins. And drunke in the quantity aboue-said, doth extenuate the rough humours, and causeth a cleare voice, and this water gargelled in the throte, and holden in the mouth, doth helpe the swelling of the throte, and vlcers of the gums, for it both resolueth, breaketh, and consumeth. And this water drunk morning & euening, vnto the quantity of foure ounces at a time, for three or foure weekes together, doeth helpe the water betweene the skin, if that the patient refraineth much and often drinking: for the lesse the patient then drinketh, the more he sendeth forth of the water in the vrine, and by that meanes is the sooner holpen. These hitherto of the properties of the Radishes.

Of the ordering, care, and secrets of the Nauew. Chap. 58.

THe Nauew well beareth any aire in a manner, and delighteth in a fat lose ground, but it better prospereth in a leane and drie grauelly ground. And the propertie of the place doth change the Nauew into a Rape, and the rape contrariwise into a Nauew. And that your Nauewes may well prosper, sowe them in a well laboured and dunged ground. And they also will come vp being sown in those places where the corne hath beene reaped of that same eare. And if you see that they grow too thicke then remoue them, and set them thinner, whereby the other vnremoued may grow the bigger in the rot: they ought to be sowen about the end of July, and in all the moneth thorow of August: and if they happen to lacke raine, then to water them so often as need shall require, and in the weeding about them, both the Nauew and Rape be much strengthened, and grow the better. And those Nauews be the better, which be long, and in a manner wrinkled, not bigge, and not hauing many roots, but one onely

roote,

and that both sharpe and straight: and of the Nauewes is made a wholsome composition with the Radish, a little salt, vineger, hony, mustard, and sweete spices, and without spices also the same may be made pleasant to eate.

The Physicke helps.

Nauew is hot of quality in the second degree, & doth much nourish, but hardly digesteth, & maketh the flesh soft, & puffeth vp, yet lesse then the Rape, for the which cause, if the Nauewes be boiled in water, and that the first water be cast away, and in the boiling of the second water, the hardnes of the substance tempered, and so they ingender a meane nourishment between good & euill. And of this, such as are not wel boiled do hardly digest, & cause windines, & a stopping both of the veines & pores. Therfore the Nauewes are best to be eaten when as they haue bin sod in two waters, and in the third seething to be boiled with the fat of Beefe or Mutton. These hitherto of the properties of the Nauew.

Of the ordering, care, and secrets, both of the Parsenep and yellow Carret. Chap. 59.

THe garden Parsnep is well knowne to most persons, and is vsed in most places, which (as Rutilius writeth) being tenderly sod, nourisheth well the body. And now Palladius willeth Parsneps to be sowen in the seeds, or set in the rootes, in the moneths of December, Januarie, and March, in fat ground, deepe digged, lose, and well turned vp, and orderly dressed. And the seeds also must be thin sowen, and likewise the rootes thin set, whereby they may grow the bigger. And after the comming vp, they must bee weeded about for the better increase also of the roote. And Pliny writeth, that there be many kinds of Carrets, and this not of themselues, but of the proper places where they grow so altered. And now the yellow Carrets (most sowen in gardens) ought to be ordered in the sowing, like as we haue aboue taught in the vsage of the Parsneps, and they ought also to be sowen as well in Haruest as in the Spring time, and after they be come vp, then to be remoued and set thinner, for so they prosper much the better, and waxe longer in the rootes.

The Physicke helps.

The roote of the Parsnep is hot in the middle of the second degree, and moist in the first degree, so that the same eaten doth greatly profite the body. And now the root tenderly sodden & eaten, causeth vrine, & doth especially profite the melancholy. And the gardē Parsneps also eaten with meate be profitable to the body, in that they ingender good blood, & the wilde Parsnep roots eaten of women, do moue the tearmes. And the Parsnep roote hanged on the necke, doth help the swelling of the throte, and no venemous beast shall harme the person which beareth the roote about him. And the seedes of the Parsnep drunke with wine, and applied in plaster forme to the priuie place (as *Dioscorides* writeth) doeth drawe downe the tearmes, helpeth the straitnes of making water, and the paine of the side, which otherwise is called the plurisie. And the roote applied plaster wise doth helpe the bite or sting of venemous wormes. Also the roote sodden and eaten, doth cause vrine, and prouoketh the veneriall act. And the leaues bruised and laide plaster wise with hony, doth cleanse and heale the great eating in the vlcers. And the hearbe with the roote shred together, & distilled about the end of March, which drunk morning and euening, vnto the quantity of three ounces at a time, and the pallie members bathed with the water, doeth helpe the shaking of them. And drinking euery night to the quantity of fixe ounces at a time, doth prouoke the veneriall act, and increaseth the sperm of man: and this water also drunke doth helpe the straitnes of making water.

And now the garden Carret (as writeth *Constantine*) is hot & drie in the second degree. But the Carret which groweth of the owne accord (named the wilde Carret) is both lesse then the garden or sowen Carret, and is also drie and hot in the third degree. Also the garden Carrets tenderly sodden with meate, are pleasant and holesome. But now the wilde Carret boiled in wine, with as many figs as you think needfull, and drinke, doth put away the drie cough: and the selfe same wine drunke, doeth helpe the hard fetching of winde.

And

And the hearbe or roote boiled in lie or water, and washing the head therwith, doth help the shedding of the haire, proceeding of a colde cause: and three handfuls of this hearbe boiled in wine & oyle, and applied plaster wise on the belly doth put away wind & heateth the stomack. And the herbe boiled with mallowes and herbe mercury in wine and oyle, and applied in plaster forme on the nauill, doeth helpe gripings of the bowels. These hitherto of the properties both of the Parsnep and Carret.

Of the ordering, care, and secrets of the Melons and all kind of Pompions. Chap. 60.

MElons and all kinds of the Pompions, desire (in a manner) the same earth and aire which the Citrons and Cucumbers doe, and yet the earth not so fatte nor so much dunged, whereby they may growe the pleasanter in taste and be the sooner ripe. And all kinds ought to be sowen thin, as the seedes put two foote asunder in the earth, well laboured and cast diligently into beds, for that they ioy in largenes of rome where they may spread hither and thither. And they be also greatly comforted with hearbes growing neare to them, so that they neede little weeding: And they ought to be often watered, vntill they be well sprung vp, but after you may not: and they be then ripe to be eaten, when they sauour sweete and appeare yellow within. Also those Melons or Pompions be the pleasanter in eating, which haue farre smaller seedes then the other.

And there be other kindes of them which be small, greene, and very long, and all (in a manner) are crooked, which be named Melons, and doe also eate sower, like the Citrons, hauing the like taste in the eating, but they be not so colde as Citrons, and therfore the better digested. And if you would make them sweete in the eating, then let the seedes be steeped for three daies together, in the sweete liquor made of water and hony, called otherwise Hulse, or in sweete Cow milke, and after the drying, set orderly in the earth: for so the Pompions comming vp of those seeds will be far sweeter and plea-

sant of taste. And the Pompions will sauour and smell verie sweete, if the seedes be laid for a good whiles among Rose leaues, and that those leaues mixed with the seedes, be so put into the earth, or otherwise the seedes bee either steeped in Rose water, or in some other pleasant sweete water, and then set (after the drying in the shadowe) into the ground. And here learne, that Cats ought carefully to be defended from the Pompions, for that they greedily desire to come to them.

And as touching the other secrets, as to make them grow timely, very big, and without seedes: Read hereafter, where we intreat of the ordering of Gourds and Cucumbers.

The Physicke helps.

The Melons be cold and moist in the second degree: but those which be sweet in taste, are temperatly cold, & the seeds haue the like property in medicine to be vsed. And pleasantly doeth the Pompion eate, yet very hardly digesteth, through the coldnes mixed to the moisture of it. And the Pompion is then to be eaten, when the stomacke before is thorowly cleansed, in that the same doeth lightly alter into those humours, and doth so slacke digestion, by hauing preheminence in the stomacke. And of this we learne by the mind of the ancient men, that we eat the Pompions fasting, and to eat no other meat after them, vntill they be halfe digested in the body. And the eating of them do greatly help vnnatural heats and wicked Agues. And the seeds do purge the skin, if the skin be washed with the decoction of them. And the Melons haue the vertue of clensing, as writeth *Galen* in his booke *De alimentorum facultatibus*: and of this they may aptly clense the spots of the face, or Sun-burning, red pimples, and the foulnesse of the body, through the spots of sundry colours. And the person which is ill coloured in the face, let him or her take the seedes of the Melon, pilling off the vpper skin of them, vnto which put a litle beane meale, and working the seedes into fine pouder, mixe them wel together, & after make smal cakes of the same with Rose water, which drie in the Sunne, and when they be thus dried, then

then wash the face with those cakes orderly, and they wil after cause the face become very cleere and faire, and cleanse the filthie spots of the skin. And the seeds eaten or drunke, doe cause vrine, and purge the lungs and kidneis. And more do the seeds worke in the lungs then in the bladder, for that a more stronger and mightier remedy ought to be ministred in the stone of the bladder, then in the stone of Kidneis or Loynes. And the vpper rinde of the Melon laid to the forhead, doth stay the running of the eies. And the root of the Melon doth heale such vlcers that stand full of matter, if the same be applied plaster wise with hony on the places. And many do eat the Melons with vineger, mixing with it the Peny-royall and Onions together, for so they temper the harming force of the cold of it: and the Melons distilled, which ought to be done when they be ripe, and shred into smal pieces, the water drunke once euery morning, vnto the quantitie of three or foure ounces, for the space of a moneth, doth greatly helpe the stone, causeth vrine, and purgeth the Kidneis: also the same water cooleth and delaieth al inward heats not vnnatural, cooleth the liuer, and ceaseth the thirst tempered with suger. And this water doeth helpe a hot cough, if linnen clothes dipped in it be applied without, and it both putteth away heats & swellings of the body, wherfoeuer they shall be. These hitherto of the properties of the Melons and all the kinds of Pompions.

Of the ordering, care, and secrets of the Cucumber. Chap. 61.

Cucumbers be either sowen or set in beds or in furrows, a foote and a halfe high, and three foote broad, and the spaces betweene the furrowes ought to bee eight foote broad, whereby they may the freelier spread out and runne abroad. And Palladius willeth the seedes after the sowing, to be often watered, vntill they be somewhat sprung vp, for that they ioy much in moisture.

And after they be thus sprung vp, which commonly do appeare after the first or seuenth day sowing, then may you water them no longer, for that the watring afterward doeth some destroy and kill them. And heere learne, that when the

sæds be sowen, you ought then in the first or eight day following, to sée if the sædes be then hard or opened, a sure note or token that they may be good, but if the sædes be soft, then doe they throughly declare to be naught.

And in this case found, you ought to set other in their places, prouing againe the sixth day after, which finding in like condition corrupted, then set other in their places, and this so often do, vntill they appeare aboue the earth. And they also desire to be sowen or set in a fatte earth, well dressed, dunged, and moist, and set in the end of the moneth of Aprill, and also in the beginning of May: and after their comming vp, they neither néed raking or wéeding with the hands: for that they be much holpen with the other hearbes growing neare vnto them. And to make them the tenderer and pleasanter in the eating, kéepe the seedes for two daies before the sowing, in sheeps milke mixed with hony, or as Pliny writeth, in water mixed with hony, or in water mixt with suger, for so do they cause the tenderer, whiter, and pleasanter Cucumbers, both in the smel and tast, and fairer also to the sight. And the same experience doe Columella, Florentine the Grécke, Pliny and Palladius write. And the Cucumbers also will grow long, white, and tender, if that vnder the branches of the Cucumbers growing, you set either a boule or pan of water and hony, two hand breadth beneath them, for by that meanes they be caused ỹ like, as writeth Gargilius Martialis. And as they spread and runne out into length, so ought they then to bee borne vp with props and other meanes from the earth, for the weaknes of their branches, and vnto the better growing and prospering of the Cucumbers And if you will haue Cucumbers without seeds, then before the setting dip your sæd in the oyle of Sauine, mixt with the herbe Culix bruised, and the Cucumbers wil after grow the like. And to haue Cucumbers timely ripe, and in a manner all the yeare, then vse the seeds in the like order, as shall after be taught of the gourds, and that they also be set in such vessels or baskets, that they may afterward in the colde season, be drawne vnder the succour of some warme place in the house, and in warme and

Sunny

Sunny daies set againe abroad. And they may also be set vnder the close couering of the walke in a garden, from the cold winds and frosts, and from the great heat of the Sun, and so continue all the yeare thorow, as write both Pliny and Columella, that Tiberius Cæsar had the like. And beware that they which haue their monethly courses, doe not then either come neare, nor handle them in no wise, for feare of hindring their growth afterwards, and as some thinke, they doe kill the yong Cucumbers by their looking then vpon them. And to haue besides your Cucumbers with little moisture in them, let then the hole in the furrow, in which you shal set the sæds be filled halfe vp with chaffe, and the other halfe couered againe with earth, and water them nothing at all after the doing on this wise.

The Physicke helps.

Cucumbers be colde and moist in the second degree, as writeth *Ægineta*, and doe hardly digest, but the outward part of them doth cause a perfiter moisture to such, hauing hot and strong stomackes, and extinguisheth thirst. And the whole substance also of the Cucumber eaten in the summer, doeth greatly profite such, which then exercise themselues with any labour. But the eating of them do much harme the flegmatick and delicate persons, which do no labour of body, and that to their stomacks especially. And yet the water or iuice of them doth help such diseased with the Ague, and ceaseth thirst.

Also the meat of the Cucumbers hard within, and heauy in the hand, bee dangerous to the stomacke, and of this the ripe ones be the oftner willed to be eaten, which are known on this wise: that when they be soft in the feeling, and light in the hand, then they be fittest to be eaten. And the seedes drunk in milk, do greatly helpe such hauing a blistred bladder, & drunk in wine with so many seeds of Cummin as you may wel take vp with three fingers, and bruised al together, doth greatly helpe the cough. And the seedes also bruised, and drunke with womens milke, doeth helpe the frenzinesse: and also doeth helpe those that spitte matter vppe,

being

being drunke with a little quantity of Cummin seeds. And the Cucumber eaten doth cause a soluble belly, & profiteth the stomacke, as writeth *Dioscorides*: and the smell of them doth restore the person out of his wit. And the seedes haue a meane force to cause vrine: and the seedes boiled in wine, and laid plaster wise, with the greene leaues vppon, doe helpe the bite of Dogs. And the seedes bruised and tempered with hony, and that laid on hot burning Pushes, doe qualifie the heate, and cleare them. These hitherto of the properties of the Cucumber.

Of the ordering, care, and secret of the Gourd. Chap. 62.

The Gourdes desire to be sowen or set in fat ground, moist, dunged, and well laboured, as writeth Palladius. And in watering the sædes often they prosper the better, for that they much ioy, and are holpen with moisture, although there be some which increase with a small watring, and be also more pleasanter by this in the eating. And if you happen to set the sædes in a drie ground, then set an earthen pan ful of water neere to them, putting clothes or lists made sharpe at the one end, and hanging halfe out of the pan ouer the edges of it, that they may so drop continually water on them in the forme of feltring, as the wise name it: And this way also of the watering of them doth greatly helpe in a drowth. And further Palladius willeth the sædes to be set in the end of the moneth of Aprill, and beginning of the moneth of May, a three or foure foote asunder, and in such sort, as that two of the sædes be thrust into the earth together, with three of the fingers, and that the blunt ends also be turned downeward, and the sharp ends standing vpward. And that a night before they be thus planted in the earth, the seeds be put into a pan of water, casting then forth such seedes which swim aboue, and the other not the like swimming, or rather lying in the bottome, set in the earth well mixed with dung. And they may not be set in low furrowes, lest the raine falling, and filling those furrows, do so choke and kil the yong plants sprung vp. And when they be well sprung vp, and appeare aboue the earth, then rake the earth, putting it well about them

them, and as néede shall require, to vse to water the plants. And if they happen to be set in an earth somewhat lose, then after they be sprung vp into some bignes, the earth round about ought to be déepe digged vp that the roots may so stretch and run out diuers waies. And as they grow vp stil, you may make a couer ouer them like to an harbour, vnto the height of a man, that the leaued branches may be laid ouer to giue shadowe, and the leaues also laid on the Gourdes to defend the heat of the Sunne, may so cause them to grow the better. And if not on this wise, then may you let their vine runne along on the earth if you lik. And to this also in doing the like shal much auaile, wherby they may the sooner send forth their fruits, and the more store, if that the principaller and bigger heads be a little broken off in the tops, that they may so cause other branches to spring forth of the Gourds.

And Columella, Pliny, and Palladius doe write, that the sédes taken forth of the neck of the Gourd, and those set with the sharpe ends vpright, and both dunged and watered, both after bring forth long and small Gourds. And the sédes which lie in the middle of the belly of the Gourd, set with the blunt ends vpright in the earth, and both dunged and watered, do after send forth big and large Gourds. And of those doe men after they be dried, make bottles to cary Wine, Ale, or Wére in, to refresh the body withall, in the trauell of any long iorney. And those sédes which lie in the bottome of the Gourd, set with the great and blunt ends vpright in the earth, doe after cause both wide and large Gourds. And sowing all the sédes together in one hole, you must after they be wel grown aboue the earth, stay them vp with props made for the nonce. And if the yong plants be molested with greene flies of the garden, then set by them the branches of the herbe Organy, and it will either kill them by lighting there-vpon, or at the least cause them that they increase no more. And to haue Gourds to grow without sédes (like as was taught before) of the Cucumber, then lay your sédes for three daies before, either in Sauaine oyle (as Palladius writeth) or in the iuice of the herbe named Culex. And the like may be caused, if

that the first stalke sprung vp, bee so digged about, that the head of the same may appeare, and as it alwaies groweth vp, so to be digged bare of the earth: and this doe the third time, if neede shall so require. And this also doe, that as the branches spring forth, and runne along on the earth, the like cut away of them, preseruing alwaies the principal, and this will so cause them to bring forth Gourds without seedes, hauing onely but a soft pulpe within. And now to haue either timely Gourds or Cucumbers; then at the beginning of the spring put fine sifted earth, either into an old basket, or deepe earthen pan, and the same wel mixed with dung, sprinckle or moisten a little with water, and after set the same abroad in warme and sunny daies, and in a smal rain; but at the setting of the Sun, set the same againe vnder some couert, and this often doe, in watering it in the meane whiles vntill all the frosts and cold season be past. And after that when a faire day commeth, then set the whole pan or basket to the brim in the earth well dressed & trimmed, couering and raking the earth ouer and about it, and after ordering the same (as afore is taught) you shal so haue the timely fruits, either of ỹ Gourd, or cucumber. And the same also you may the soner procure, & with lesser trauell and paines, if that you cut off the rank and superfluous shoots, either of the gourds or cucumbers, for by that meanes will they speedilier send foorth their fruits. And to make diuers formes like to birds or beasts, & sundry perfect letters (of the Romane fashion) on your Gourds or Cucumbers, then take the yong fruit of either, as the same groweth on the branches, inclosing into a mould of the like bignes to the fruit, in the which let be imprinted deep or hollow in the forme that you desire to haue after on your Gourds or Cucumber, and the like shall then appeare when as the fruit is come to his ful growth and bignes. But further of this may you learne in my litle treatise of Natural and Artificiall conclusions, where I write more at large, both of the same & the compositions of sundrie strange formes of apples, and other fruits, with other pleasant (and that right marueilous) matters to read and heare. And now to come to our former mat-

ter

ter in these: if that you desire to haue long and smal gourds, then take a long Cane bored thorow, or a hollow pipe, into which put the very yong gourd, & let the same so hang, which after wil stretch out all the length of the hollow pipe, for that ỳ matter which should run into a breadth, is by that meanes sent into a length. And Pliny writeth, that he saw a Gourd of 9. foot long. And a like conclusion of making the Gourds of such a length may be done, if that you set vnder the Gourds a pan or boule of water, a hand breadth or somewhat more beneath the ends hanging down, which in the next day following you shall find stretched out to the water, and thus setting the vessell deeper, they will shoot out longer. And on this wise you may make them shoot out of a marueilous length, without any other craft or practise of the like. But if you take away the vessell of water, then doe they after bend and turne vpward, so much do the Gourds loy in the moisture, & otherwise refuse the drieth. And Pliny writeth, that the gourds do so mightily hate oyle, that setting a boule or other vessell of the same vnder them, in the like sort as you did the water, will in the next morrow be turned or bended another way. And if not turned on this wise, then will they be bended (in disdaining the oile) into the fashion of a hooke, which you shal manifestly trie in the space of one night. And heere learn, that both Columella and Florentius giue speciall warning, that no such person hauing then the monethly course, do handle or come neere, either to the gourd or cucumber as they grow, for by the handling or approching neere to them, they soone after wither away.

And if such also being in the like case doth then but look on them, they either kill the yong ones with their looke, or cause them to grow vnpleasant, or else corrupted and withered. And those Gourds which you minde to keepe for seedes, let them be hanged vp with their stems or stalkes vnto winter time, and dried as they hang, either in the heat of the sun, or in the smoke (as Palladius writeth) for ỳ otherwise the seedes will putrifie and serue after to no vse. And if you mind to keep the fresh and greene Cucumbers and Gourds a long time,

then hang them within a Hogshead, or other vessell of white wine Lees, not yet turned and sower, in such sort, that they be wholly couered with Lees.

And in the like condition & maner you may preserue them a long time, if that you lay them into a brine prepared for the only purpose. Also the Gourdes and Cucumbers be the like preserued for a long time, if that they be hanged high in a pipe hauing vineger in it, or at ỹ least so high, that they touch not the vineger in no wise. And the vessell besides seruing to this vse, ought to be well pitched about, that the vineger breath not forth, in that the vineger is so penitrable, through the thinnesse of the parts. And the Gourdes and Cucumbers may best be kept fresh and faire all the yeare through without putrifying, if that you put them into the distilled water of vineger, which will not after suffer them to putrifie, but maintaine their fresh estate, as hath often beene tried of the skilfull practitioners. And besides these, if that you cut off yong ones whiles they be yet tender, and scauld them in hot water, and after lay them forth to coole all a night through, being cleare and calme, and on the morrow put into a sharpe brine, which will so kæpe them fresh a long time. And now by all meanes aboue taught, you may kæpe Cucumbers and Gourds fresh all the winter through. And you may besides all these make your Gourds laxatiue, and to purge the belly, if that you infuse the seedes for a day and night, in the liquor made of Rubarbe, Scamanie, Coloquintida, Agaricke, and such like purges: and after this, sowe the seeedes in the earth, in like order as before was taught. And to make them pleasant of taste and smell, order the seedes in like sort before the setting of them, as you were taught in the other chapters going before.

The Physicke helps.

The Gourd is colde and moist in the second degree, and the seedes doe serue to the vse of medicine: and the Gourd also is not to be eaten raw, for that the same is so vnsauourie meat, and therefore it ought the rather to be sodden, rosted, or fried before the eating, as writeth *Galen*. Now the seedes cleane

cleane picked from the vpper skin, & ſodden in barley water, and after ſtrained and drunke, doth helpe the diſeaſes in the liuer, the kidneis, and the bladder, and the impoſtumes of the breaſt, and prouoketh vrine: and if a ſicke perſon ſhal abhor to drink of this water, then may you make a ſirope of it with ſuger, for that the ſame ſo greatly profiteth vnto all agues. And for the heat of the liuer, take the iuice of the pieces, and meat of the Gourds, and temper the ſame with milk and vineger, and after dipping a linnen cloth in the ſame, apply the liuer without, and it much helpeth. And the gourds alſo ought to be hanged vp & dried, as afore was ſpecified, and the winter approching, the ſeeds ought then to be taken forth and rubbed with ſalt, that ſo the clammy humors may be auoided. And the kernels alſo ought to be laid in a drie place, leſt the moiſture corrupt the ſeedes. And the ſeedes may well be kept for three yeares in good efficacie. And the meate and piece of the Gourd laid plaſter-wiſe to the fore part of the head of yong children, doth ſo take away the inflamation and great heate of the braine and head. And the iuice of the ſame anointed on hot burning gouts, doeth aſſwage the burning heat of the ſame, and alſo qualifieth the inflamations of the eies. Alſo the iuice preſſed out of the meat of the Gourd, & the ſame dropped into the eares, doth aſſwage the burning heat of the. And to the ſame vſe it may either be applied alone, or els mixed with oile of Roſes, and ſo dropped hot into the eares. And the ſame iuice mixed with the oile of Roſes, & anointing the ridgebone & loynes with the ſame, doth aſſwage the burning heat of the Ague. And the ſame doth alſo help the burning heat of that griefe called the holy fire. Alſo the aſhes made of the rinds of the Gourds, and ſtrawed on the vlcers of ſhamefaſt places, now growen into a rottenneſſe, doth not onely clenſe, but bringeth them into a ſcarre: which aſhes ſtrawed on a burning, doth marueilouſly heale the ſame. And the decoction of the meat of the Gourd, with a little honie and Niter, and that drunk, doth looſe gently the belly. And if any making hollow the raw Gourd, and doth after fill the ſame with wine,

& setteth it abroad for a space, & that on the morrow drinketh moderatly of it fasting, it doth also gently loose the belly. And the raw meat of the Gourd shred, and laid plaster-wise on swellings and hard risings of the flesh, doth greatly asswage them. And the Gourd full ripe, ought to be distilled together with the seedes, and finely shred. And now the distilled water mixed with suger, doth cease the thirst, helpeth the cough proceeding of a cold cause, and looseth the belly. And the same water drunk twice a day, for twenty or forty daies together, to the quantity of three ounces at a time, doth helpe the stone of the kidneis. And in like manner drunke for ten daies together, prouoketh vrine, and cleanseth the reines and bladder. Moreouer, the same water also drunke, doth qualifie the burning of the ague. These hitherto of the properties of the Gourd.

Of the ordering and care of the Beane of Egypt. Chap. 63.

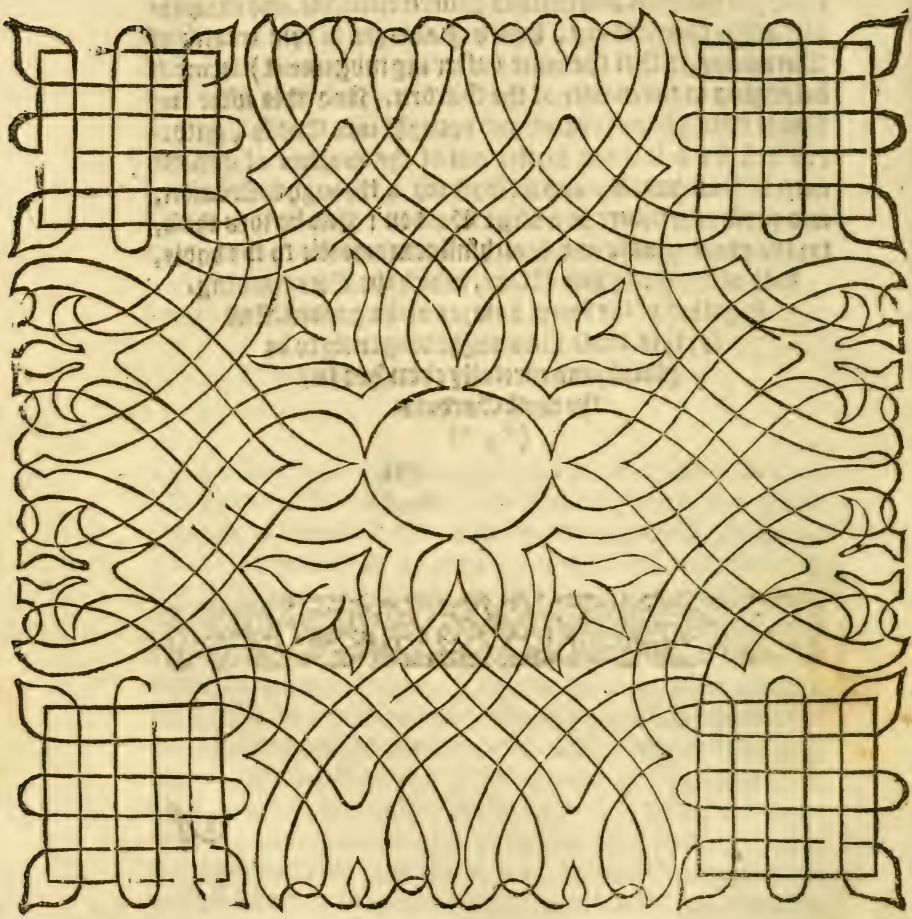
The Beane of Egypt ought to be sowen or set in the moneth of February, and loueth also to growe in a moist place fat and watrish, & to come vp among running springs, but for the quality of the ground, it greatly forceth not, so that the same be alwaies watered, as need doth require. And it may in a manner beare continually leaues, if the same be defenced from the cold, by some little couer or shed, standing vnder all the winter time. And now the place from whence the slips of the most plants be daily slipped off from the stalks, for the intent to be set againe, will sufficiently instruct any meane witted person, how at times conuenient he should set those againe in the earth. And where at this time, we doe omit, and ouerpasse sundry Posie and Garland flowres, with herbes profitable to be eaten, it is, for that they require no other manner or diligence of dressing and ordering, then the former taught. And many also of these come vp of their owne accord, and sundry others, which delight in the like order of planting and sowing as the former. And therefore let this

Treatise

Treatise fauourably passe, which I meane hereafter to increase with sundry pleasant flowres, and profitable hearbes, needfull to be sowen and set in the most Gardens. And in the meane time looke for a proper Treatise (and that right profitable) of the most marueilous gouernment, vse, and commodity of the Honie Bees, which I adioyne to this treatise of Gardening, in that the same (after my iudgement) seemeth belonging to the matter of the Garden. And this after my simple skill, I haue reduced and brought into Enlish, gathered first by a learned writer out of the workes of ancient men of Husbandrie, and set forth for a through instruction, and perfite furniture in a large Garden: And besides these, for the great profite and healthfull commoditie to the bodie, both of the Hony and Waxe, which the Bées cunningly gather of the sweet flowres of the garden. And for this cause Bées ought diligently to be placed, and carefully cherished in the most Gardens.

(***)

A proper knot for a Garden, where is ſpare roome enough, the which may be ſet either with Time or Iſope, at the diſcretion of the Gardener.



CERTAINE NECESSARY PRECEPTS in the cutting vp, plucking away, gathering and preseruing, of the most hearbes, flowres, seedes, and rootes, seruing especially to Medicine.

CHAP. 64.

THose herbes which serue most for the pot to be boyled with meat, ought to be cut vp and gathered, when as they be well growen in height, and that with a sharpe knife, somewhat aboue the earth. But of sundry herbes be the leaues onely gathered, and that with the hand plucked vp, and broken off, when they be come (as it were) vnto their ful growth: which be, the Lettuce, the Endiue, the Succory, the Bëtes, the Arach, the Clary, the Borage, Marigold leaues, Parcely, Colewort leaues, and such like. But in the winter time, the stalkes be wholly cut vp, leauing then no stems behinde. And besides, in all these aboue rehearsed, except the Parcely, the Fennell, the Sage, and certaine others: if that the stems or stalkes after they be well come, be then broken off or cut away, they wil continue the longer grëne and without séeding. And when any would vse any hearbes hot of qualitie, then let him rather gather the hearbes fresh and greene, then vse those being drie, for that the greene doe lesse heate, in that the moisture of those grëne doth greatly mittigate the heat in them.

And for the onely vse of Sallets, gather your hearbes, being then very yong and tender buds, except of the Lettuce and Endiue, which after the minde of the Gardners, do eate pleasanter being growen vnto a whitenesse, and then eaten yong and grëne. And now those hearbes (for the vse of medicine) ought rather to be gathered and cut vp, when as they

be in a manner come vnto their growth, and that before the colour of the flowres begin to change, and the seeds somwhat appeare: And this also ought to be done in a cleare & warme day, and that they haue beene moistned with some showers falling for two or three daies before, so that they ought not to bee gathered when any raine, moisture, or wet dewe is on them, nor being then drie parched with the heate of the Sunne, nor in a rainie and cloudie day, for any of these doe much hinder the keeping any time in their vertue.

Also they ought to bee gathered, when they bee full of iuice and fresh, and that not the smaller or bigger are to be chosen, but the meaner, and such besides which fall not to withering. And onely the tender toppes, the leaues, and flowres are to be gathered and dried in the shaddowe, in a place open toward the South, not being moist and defended from the dust and smoke, and for the better defending and preserving of them, to be put vp in bagges close bound at the mouth, and in boxes for that vse.

And they also keepe their strength and vertue for one whole yeare, so that they are to bee renued euery yeare, vnlesse the hearbes bee gathered in such a yeare, that the season then shal be long without raine, and that the Summer following bee verie moist: for then may you rather vse those hearbes gathered in the drie Summer before, then those in the rainie yeare following. And the flowres for the vse of medicine ought then to be gathered, when as they be in greatest force, and full open abroad, vnlesse the Lilly, the Flowre-deluce, and Rose, which ought rather to bee gathered, when as they be not wholly opened: And they ought also in the like order to be dried and laid vp, as aboue was taught of the hearbes, and so they lack also for a yeare in their strength and vertue.

And they ought besides to be renued euery yeare, like as was taught before of the hearbes. And seedes ought to be gathered when they be thorowly ripe, and before they shedde or fall off, and this also must be in a cleare and faire day.

Also

Also the fuller seedes and not wrinckled, and such which keepe the perfect sauour and taste of the kinde of the hearbe, are rather to bee gathered and kept, and dried in the like condition as the hearbes, and afterward put into glasses, or hanged vp in bagges, and this in a drie place, being frée from moisture.

And the fruits of the plants are to bee gathered, when as they be in their full ripenesse, and not before they beginne to fall off. And both the fuller and waightier are to be chosen, which ought afterward to be dried in the Sunne, or in an Ouen, by reason of the moisture contained in them.

And the rootes are to bée gathered in their apt places, and the best of euery kinde, and that the fruits be lately fallen off, and the leaues of the stems begin to shed away, and this you must doe in a cleare day, for the great raine doeth weaken them, and filleth them full of moisture.

And the greater rootes may be kept for two yeares, but the lesser onely for a yeare, if they be hanged vp to drie in a shadowie place, and that from dust and smoke. And as touching the whole hearbe together, the same ought to be gathered when it shall come vp vnto the full growth.

And whatsoeuer are gathered in the decrease of the moone, be better to vse, and will longer be kept then those which be gathered in the increase of the moone. And the worthier herbs be those, and to greater effect, which keepe their liuely colour, stronger in sauour, and more apparant in taste.

And the Roses and other flowres gathered in a faire and warme day, doe yeelde a sweeter distilled water, then those flowres which be gathered in a wet and clowdie day: and this distilled water besides lasteth longer and to better effect then that other of the contrary manner. And further learne, that from the foure and twenty day of the moneth of March vnto the foure and twenty day of June, are the leaues of all manner of hearbs most of strength and vertue, and do especially serue in that time to the vse of medicine. And from the xxiiii. day of June, vnto the xxiiii. of September, are the stems

and stalks in their ful strength and vertue to the vse of medicine. And from the xviii. day of September, vnto the xxv. of March againe, are the rootes of the most hearbes in their full strength and vertue to be ministred in medicines. And heere also learne, that the wilde herbes are stronger in vertue then the garden herbes, although the wilde be lesser in bignes, as Pliny writeth. And the wilde hearbes also growing vpon the hils and mountaines, bee farre stronger in effect then those wilde, growing in plaines & lower ground. And to conclude, all hearbes and seedes which more aptly serue to the vse of medicine, ought rather to be kept and hanged vp in bags, but the flowres close stopped in narrow mouthed glasses, that the sauour and strength of the flowres breath not forth, and that these also be set and hanged vp in shadowie places frée from moisture, and from the dust and smoke. And the rots which you mind to kéepe grén, are better reserued and kept in light sand, except they be such rotes which be rather kept dried, and are also better preserued in a drie and shadowie place, as aboue was taught. But the seedes of the Lékes and the Onions, and of certaine other hearbs, be better kept in their huskes, then the most seedes of the other hearbes. And heere learne the opinion of the learned Physition Montagnana, in the gathering of the rootes, flowres, and fruits, seruing to the vse of medicine, which affirmeth that the rots ought not to be gathered vntill the fall of the leaues, and this especially from the middle of September, vnto the beginning of Nouember, and the flowres are to be gathered from the middle of May, to the beginning of July, and ought to be gathered according to the diuersity of times of the hearbs.

Thus endeth the second Boke of the care, ordering, and secrets of the most hearbs of the Garden.

(***)

A

PROFITABLE INSTRVCTION OF THE PERFECT ORDERING OF BEES, WITH THE MARVEILOVS NATVRE, property, and gouernement of them : and the neceſſary vſes, both of their Hony and Waxe, ſeruing diuerſly, as well in inward as outward cauſes: gathered out of the beſt writers.

TO WHICH IS ANNEXED A Treatiſe intituled : Certaine Husbandly Coniectures of dearth and plenty for euer, and other matters *alſo meet for Husbandmen to know, &c.*

By THOMAS HILL *Londener.*

Imprinted at London by H.B.
1608.

The Authors out of which this Treatiſe is gathered.

C. Plinius.
Ariſtotle.
Albertus.
M. Cato.
Iunius Columella.
M. Varro.
Palladius Rutilius.
Theophraſtus.
Guilhelmus de Conchis.
Galen.
Paule Aegineta.
Cornelius Agrippa.
Hieronimus Cardanus.
And ſundry others.

To the worſhipfull Maſter M. Gentleman, Thomas Hill wiſheth all health and felicity.

AS it hath beene, and is yet (worſhipfull Sir) a trade commonly vſed among moſt men, to chuſe out from a great number, ſome one vnder whoſe name and title they may publiſh their workes: Euen ſo I (following the ſteps of the learned, though in all other points moſt inferiour) hauing finiſhed this little Treatiſe of Bees, and caſting with my ſelfe vnto whom I might preſent it, found my ſelfe much bounden vnto your worſhip, both for your gentlenes which I haue of late taſted, and alſo for your friendſhip which I finde alwaies readie towards mee. And therefore hauing none other waies to recompence the very leaſt part of your courteſie and gentleneſſe, thought it beſt to gratifie your worſhip with ſuch a ſimple gift as mine abilitie will ſuffer mee to beſtowe vpon ſuch a friend. And although Sir, this Treatiſe is farre diſſonant from your ſtudies, yet conſidering your earneſt deſire to knowledge and learning: and againe pondering the pleaſantneſſe of the matter, thought this might bee made a recreation for your grauer ſtudies. For when your minde ſhal be ſearching for profound reaſons, and oppreſſed with deepe cogitations, then taking and reading this little Pamphlet, it will bring a forgetfulneſſe vnto your former wearineſſe, and cauſe a new delight vnto your minde:

For

For heerein may you see, first the marueilous gouernement of the Bees, through the onely instinct of Nature, as in their obedience to their King, and other officers, in punishing the idle loyterers, in cherishing the true labourers, in their manner of fighting, with such like a great many: as it is wonderfull to read, and almost vncredible to beleeue: Secondly, the liuely effects and commodities that arise of their Hony and Waxe: and lastly, how profitable they are for the commonwealth, and how necessary for mans vse. I might heere speake much in the praise of the Bee, which all I will omit, seeing onely mine intent is to shew my selfe mindfull of your good turnes and benefits, desiring you to take this in good part, which proceedeth from a wel willing mind. And I am sorie, that at this present I had none other matter more worthy to haue gratified your worshippe withall: but that wanteth in power, aboundeth in good will. Thus troubling your worship no longer, I commit you to the keeping of the Almighty, praying him to increase in you al vertue and godlines, and to grant you the long yeares of Nestor.

Yours most bounden,

THOMAS HILL.



Although (gentle Reader) I haue not giuen thee any labour of mine owne, but rather haue collected the sayings and writings of many antient Authors, yet I trust they shall be well accepted of thee without offence. For as he that setteth forth vnto the view and reading of all men, such knowledge as by his long studie and experience he hath gotten, is worthy to haue his due reward and commendation: euen so hee is not to be discommended, who painefully reuoluing the bookes and volumes of many and diuers antient writers, reduceth them into one little treatise, for the commodity and profite of the simple & vnlearned sort, for whose onely sakes I haue trauelled in the translation of this worthy matter, touching the right vsage and handling of Bees: a thing verie rare, and seldome seene in the English tongue, and yet verie profitable for a Common-wealth, and commonly vsed among the poore husbandmen, though not in euery point as they ought to be, yet according to their knowledge and experience. But I, to the intent that a further learning might be added to their skill, haue so trauelled therein, that I trust their knowledge shall be increased, and such as haue no knowledge at all, may be instructed without any other teaching. I haue ioyned this little Treatise vnto my booke of Gardening, for that most men doe ioyne them both together, as when they place their Bees in their Gardens, whereas they may with lesse paine and easilier gather of the sweet smelling stoures, their Hony, and Waxe. And for all these my paines (gentle Reader) I craue nought else of thee, but to giue me that which of dutie in a manner I ought to haue: for if thou doest receiue any commoditie or fruit, either by this, or by any other Treatise hereto annexed, which hath to name the Husbandly coniectures, with sundry rules of Physicke, then giue me the reward of thy good report, and frienaly accepting of these two Treatises: and if not, yet accept mine endeuours in good part, which be meant to do thee good. And thus leauing (gentle reader) to trouble the farther, I commit thee to God, who giue thee the furtherance of knowledge, both in these and all other needfull Arts.

(***)

A neceſsary Table, ſetting forth the Contents of theſe two Treatiſes.

Theſe are treated of in the firſt Treatiſe.

WHy Bees are named to be creaſted or parted betweene, or as it were ringed or rather pleighted: what worke the ſwarme new gathered in the Hiue doe firſt take in hand, and whether they may liue after their ſtings be gone. Chap. 1.

Who firſt taught the preparation and increaſing of Bees, and found out the vſe of hony. chap. 2.

How Bees do naturally engender. chap. 3.

Of the vnperfect Bees, which men properly name Drone Bees. chap. 4.

Whether the Bees draw breath, or haue any blood within them. chap. 5.

Of the great vtility and profit of Bees to mans vſe. chap. 6.

Of the care and diligence of Bees. chap. 7.

Of the marueilous gouernment of the king of Bees, and of the obedience which they vſe to him. chap. 8.

What kind of Bees the beſt, & rather to be choſen. chap. 9.

Where hiues of Bees ought eſpecially to be placed. chap. 10.

What things Bees do chiefly abhor & greatly hate. cap. 11.

By what ſignes men may know when the Bees are diſeaſed and how they may be cured. chap. 12.

What manner of perſon the keeper of Bees ought to be. chap. 13.

By what meanes the ſwarme commeth forth, and may be preſerued from flying away. chap. 14.

Of the Bees new ſetled in a ſwarme together, and taken and recouered againe. chap. 15.

Which are the beſt and fitteſt Hiues for Bees. chap. 16.

Of the cleanlineſſe and ſweetnes of the keeper of Bees, and how the Hiues ought to be fenced about, and prepared within. chap. 17.

How

How Bees lacking hony, may be fed in the time of their neceſſitie. chap. 18.
How the dead Bees may be reſtored to life againe. chap. 19.
Of the battels that the Bees haue ſometimes amongſt themſelues. chap. 20.
How Bees loſt, may be recouered & found again. chap. 21.
That the Bees ſting no perſon that commeth neare to their Hiues. chap. 22.
When and how the Hiues ought to be gelded. chap. 23.
What the hony is, and how from the Hiues the ſame may be prepared to vſe. chap. 24.
Which hony is accounted beſt. chap. 25.
Of the venemous hony, and of the wonderfull hony of Creta. chap. 26.
Of the miraculous worthines of hony. chap. 27.
How profitable the vſe of hony is in medicine. chap. 28.
Of the drinke of hony, which they call the Mulſe water, or ſweet water of the Romans. chap. 29.
Of the drinke *Oenomel*, which is made of pure wine and honie. chap. 30.
Of the ſingular water of hony, gotten by order of diſtillation. chap. 31.
An other manner of diſtilling the hony, more at large taught. chap. 32.
The manner of diſtilling a water from hony, named the Quinteſſence. chap. 33.
The manner of drawing and making waxe of the combes. chap. 34.
What waxe is beſt allowed, &c. chap. 35.
Of the great commodity and benefite of waxe in medicines. chap. 36.
Of that which is a ſtay of the combes, and made for a defence of Bees. chap. 37.
How to make waxe white. chap. 38.
How to make red waxe. chap. 39.
How to drawe a very profitable oyle out of waxe, for ſundrie vſes. chap. 40.

Another way of drawing the oyle of waxe moſt noble, and doth marueilouſly helpe the cold Gout, the Sciatick, the ſwelling of the legs, and all other griefs of a cold cauſe. chap. 41.

Theſe deſcribed in the other Treatiſe.

CErtaine Husbandly coniectures of dearth and plenty for euer. chap. 1.
An euerlaſting Prognoſtication of the ſtate and condition of euery yeare, by the onely Kalends of Ianuary, written by the ancient and learned *Leopol. Auſt.* and other for the commodity of the wiſe husbandmen. chap. 2.
How to foreknow the ſtate of the yeare by the onely riſing of the Dogge ſtarre, out of the husbandrie of *Diophanes*. chap. 3.
Other profitable inſtructions, right neceſſarie for husbandmen to know. chap. 4.
A moſt profitable rule for the preſeruation of mans health, thorow-out the twelue moneths of the yeare, after the mind of diuers learned men of the Vniuerſity of Padua. chap. 5.
Of the falling ſick on any of the weeke daies, out of that ancient Phyſition *Hippocrates*. chap. 6.
Of thoſe manifeſt ſignes, which declare raine to follow. chap. 7.
Of thoſe manifeſt ſignes which declare faire weather to follow. chap. 8.

The first Treatise setteth forth the *strange gouernment, property, and benefite* of Bees, with the commoditie of their Hony and Waxe, which serue vnto many good vses, aswell in outward as inward causes applied: gathered out of *Pliny, Albertus, Varro, Columella, Palladius, Aristotle, Theophrastus, Cardanus, Guilhelmus de Conchis, Agrippa*, and diuers other singular Authors.

Why Bees are named to be creasted or parted betweene, or as it were ringed, or rather pleighted. What worke the swarm new gathered in the hiue first taketh in hand, and whether they may liue after their stings be gone. Chap. I.

PLinie nameth Bees cleft beasts, because of the diuision or parting betweene of the head and shoulders: and Aristotle nameth them pleighted or ringed, in that their bodies are deuided with pleights and rings. And most men knowe, that the Bees haue neither sinewes, bones, flesh, grissle, backe-bone, nor fat, but are onely created of certaine mixture, being a meane betweene these, and hauing a very few intrals. And againe no man needeth to doubt, but that the Bees be a kind of beasts greatly to be set by for mans vse, and for mans prouision, are nourished of the aire: passing thorow the deuided places, which they by great diligence and care preserue from being stopped, for as soone as they be stopped, they shortly after die, like as the same

we may learne, when any hapneth to fall or light into Oyle, which straight way after die through the oyle stopping then their powers. They haue and flie with foure wings, that they may the better carry in their bellies ỹ stings of reuengment. For when two of them striue together in flight, then do they holde and kéepe their stings in their mouthes by a grédy desire, or for eagernes sake. Now after the seuen Starres named virgiliæ, be once risen in sight aboue our horizon, then do they hide them in their proper holes, so that they go seldome after abroad vntil the beans do bud, and if they chance to begin at any time to flie abroad, when as a faire day moueth them forward, then slacke they no such daies afterward, but occupie themselues: and first they prepare & make their combs, which they fashion into apt houses, or rather cels of wax: after this they haue yong, and then begin they to gather hony. They liue also the longer by hauing their stings, for that once gon, or taken away, they die forth-with through the lacke of their intrals, which they lose together with their stings.

Who first taught the preparation and increasing of Bees, and found out the vse of Hony. Chap. 2.

THe report goeth, that one Aristomachus first found out and taught the increasing of bées, whom Pliny writeth to be so erneſt in the same, that setting apart al other affairs, he only studied night and day how he might best intreat & vse bées according to their kind. But others ascribe this inuention to one Thassius, who (as they say) deserued no lesse commendation, both for his diligence and skill among bées: but this he especially followed in the field, and that far from the towne. And of this the common people (as by a nickname) no more named him Thassius, but Agrius, for his wild or rather strange life, which he then led in the field, whom Plinie also affirmeth to haue written a booke of the increasing and multiplying of Bées. And Columella ascribeth this inuention to the inhabitants of the hill (named Hymetus) being the country of Attica, for there (saith he) was one Aristhonus, who taught (as men write) the true and perfect ordering of them. Pliny again ascribeth the inuention of hony to one Aristeus, a

man

man of Athens. Diodorus Siculus in the first booke of his workes writeth that Curetes, a people of Creta, did first find out the hony. Macrobius ascribeth the same to one Saturnus, others to the Thessalians: and many to Melissus an ancient king of Creta, others to Nassus liber pater, thus writing that Liber hath obtained the reward for finding out of hony.

How Bees do naturally engender. Chap. 3.

FIrst the Bées proceed of Bées by the actuall doing together, after which they lay egges, sitting vpon them as the hens do on their egs. And when they haue sit on them for the space of 45. daies, then do they hatch their yong ones, which yong (at the first) come forth much like to white wormes, except the king, who onely as he is hatched hath wings. At the first time one of them hatcheth fiue yong together, the next time fewer, and so fewer and fewer, vntill she commeth to one at a time, because the abundance which is in them, doth in the continuance of time weken. In the time of their sitting, they mage much noise to get them heat withall. And about the sides of the combs, be sometimes greater bées bred, which men for their sound and noise doe properly name Trumpeters, and they also haue whole hornes, of which come the bastard bées. There be also other bées bigger in bodie, much like to the kings, but they be idle and haue no sting, because of the heauines of their body. All which kinds, Guilhelmus de Conchis did obserue in the liues of a certaine Consull of Rome, which properly were made of very thinne and cleare horne. Some write that bées are also engendred and bredde monstrously, and that contrary to nature, without the mutual coniunction: if that a whole calfe be buried in the earth, & there lie rotting whiles the wind blow out of the West, for by that meanes as writeth Maro, doth the same breed Bees. And not vnlike to this doth Cornelius Agrippa, in his first booke de Occulta Philosophia, and Hiero. Cardanus in his 9. booke of subtilties write, that of a rotten horse doe waspes proceed: of an Asse, Humble bées: of a Mule, Hornets, of the hair of a woman (hauing then her monthly courses) serpents: and of Creuisses (the shels plucked off) Scorpions.

Of

Of the vnperfect Bees, which men properly name Drone Bees. Chap. 4.

THe Drone Bées (as writeth Pliny) are vnperfect Bées, without sting, and the least wearie, yet be they verie heauy of body, and slow in doing their businesse: they also doe the seruices and trauels of the true Bées, although the right and perfect Bees doe rule and gouerne them, yea & put them forwost in their labours, so that if they happen to be slowe in their doings, then doe the right bées punish them without pitty. Also these do helpe the right Bées, so well in their workes as in their breeding, for that the multitude of them, cause the more heat and warmth together. And how much the greater the multitude of them shalbe, so much more wil the increase come of the swarm. When the hony wareth ripe, then are the Drone Bées driuen forth, and the kind also of these are onely seene abroad in the Spring time.

Whether the Bees draw breath, or haue blood any in them. Chap. 5.

NOw some affirm, that the clouen beasts draw no breath, in that they haue not the fan of the heart, which is the lights or lungs; for as they write, nothing without them can breath. But Aristotle writeth, that the same is possible among Bees, hauing the sting (although they haue no blader) to breath by their sting. And the Bées haue no blood, because they haue neither heart nor lungs: yet Pliny affirmeth, that nothing done by nature may be thought or iudged incredible, for the same is fully perswaded in wise men, that Bees haue a certaine liuely moisture, like as the Cuttle in the sea, which hath a kind of incke in it, and is as the iuice of it, with the which the Diers (at this day) do make their purple colour.

Of the great vtilitie and profite of Bees vnto mans vse. Chap. 6.

A Great profit riseth by bées, if they be set in a conuenient and fit place, and that both carefully & wisely guided as Pliny writeth in his 11. booke, where he willeth, that of all other clouen beasts, the bées are principally to be cherished, because to mans vse they gather a subtile and wholsome iuice, being

being very sweete, and besides they frame (by a marueilous skill and cunning) their cottages of wax vnto mans vse, that no worke-man (be hee neuer so ingenious) can doe the like. The profit also comming by them in short time, if the weather hindereth not, is so great, that they increase in a short time into many swarmes, which swarmes againe increase others, so that the first swarmes increased, they especially thrust forth from them in the moneth of May or June, by which meanes they cause a great increase of them. As Varro affirmeth the same of two head Gentlemen in Spaine, which onely by the meanes of their Bees, gained yearly ten thousand pound (but I rather thinke fiue thousand pound, which also is very much.) And here is to be noted, that the swarmes of fiue yeares olde, doe seldome increase after other swarmes of themselues, although in ware they giue a great yelde and gaine to the owners.

Of the great care and diligence of the Bees. Chap. 7.

CErtaine Bees, as the skilfull practisers doe write, stand in the day time at the mouthes of the hiues, diligently loking to their busines, like warders placed at the gates of a Castle, that they may so defend in safegard whom they will within. In the night time they settle themselues to rest vnto the morning, vntill one of them by humming twice or thrice about, doth so stirre them forward to flie out after the other. For if they happen to keepe themselues in the morning within the hiues, then doeth the same declare a tempest to ensue that day. But being a cleare and faire morning, then do they flie forth, and returne againe to their hiues, laden with the substance of the flowres on their legs for their businesse, and this especially doe the yonger bees, so that the other bees besides do either carry the water in their bils, or on the soft mossines of the whole body. The elder bees remaining still within do also follow their busines, in diligently laying vp, & aptly dressing the same, as they would dispose their kindly food. Such as be sluggish and not labouring, they diligently note, which for their sluggishnes they bitterly punish to death. And flying abroad in a mightie wind, they marueilously stay and

guide themselues, by weighing their bodies down with little stones caried in their legges. They at the euening comming to rest doe make lesse and lesse noise in the hiue, vntill one of them flieth about, which by a like order as he mooued them forward in the morning, euen so by the same noise and humming doth he procure them to take their rest, and to be all silent within the hiue. If the Bées happen to scatter in their flying abroad, then doe they call and gather them into a swarme by the helpe of making a shril sound, either with pan, bason, or some loud cimbal. They also follow their king whither soeuer he taketh his flight, who being wearie, and not further able to flie, they carry him among them.

Wherfore that the king may not often attempt forth with the swarme for feare of losing them, the skilful practisers wil, the wings of the kings be broken off: which feeling him-selfe thus depriued of his wings, wil not after attempt to flie forth of his bounds, but remaining stil within, will cause the other Bées to abide continually with him, not leauing the hiue at any time after. They also haue counsels priuily, and rulers among them. And as Aristotle declareth the Bées to be the cleanliest among all other beasts, because in flying abroade they shed their dung from them, lest any sauor or stinke of their dung be felt in their cottages or holes. If these want hony at any time, then do they either kill or driue quite away the drone Bées.

Of the marueilous gouernment of the King of Bees, and of the obedience which they vse to him. Chap. 8.

NAture hath not onely committed her lawes to books, the which men may learne by, but hath especially set forth conditions & properties, as for an example of the like by the Bées, whose kings for doubt of reuenging, haue by the prouidence of nature no stings: whereby is to be vnderstood, that kings ruling in power, though the lacke of their stings may be by that meanes the slower to hurt and offer reuengement. Yet some affirme the kings to haue stings, but they suppose them not to vse their stings. And of this Pliny maketh a dout whether the king be armed as other Bées, or lacketh a sting.

Which

Which Columella putteth out of doubt, writing of the king, that he hath no sting, vnles any perhaps think that big head (as it were) which the king carieth in his belly, to be his sting with the which they vse at no time to sting or hurt any body. This king onely doe Bees reuerence and honour, in such sort, that any of them is obedient and very readie to doe whatsoeuer he assigneth them vnto. Also this obedience and seruice which they vse to their king, they doe not the same for feare of punishment, but onely of a loue which they owe vnto him. They punish one another in such sort, that after their stings be lost, they die forthwith. Aristotle writeth of two maner of kings, the one (as he affirmeth) to be red, which he iudgeth the better: the other king blacke of colour, which he confesseth to be lesser of body: yet howsoeuer the kings be, they are notwithstanding farre bigger of body then the hony Bees, and haue a brighter & goodlier head then the other Bees, yet shorter wings. So that their king created among them, goeth not any time forth of the hiue, without the whole swarme follow him. The king flying forth of the hiue at any time, the other follow him, in such sort that each couet to flie next him, and hopeth to be sone of the king in office: and wherso euer the king setteth or resteth him, there be other bees placed like strong holds or castles about him. About the king also be placed certain rulers, which wait vpon him by daily authoritie. If any happeth (as writeth Pliny) to breake off the kings right wing, thence om the king wil not the swarm after depart, as the like was rehearsed before. Besides these, the bees haue a maruellous order among them: if their king happen to die, they will bitterly mourne for his death, and for the lacke of an other, as such which cannot be guided and ruled without a king among them: and thus they be in continuall mourning: So that (for the time) they carry no swde into their hiues, nor flie forth, but with a sadde bewayling and humming after their king, they heape thicke together about the dead body, and vnlesse another king encreaseth by little and little among them, they die with hunger. Their king laboureth not, but as the other flie forth, bee in the

meanetime (as an exhorter) moueth and encourageth forward euery one to his worke, by his flying about in the hiue.

What kind of Bees are best, & rather to be chosen. Chap. 9.

IN this point, & for true knowledge of these, doth M. Varro describe those bees to be best which be of small bodie, and diuers and round, because they be earnest in labor, and make a thin hony, and better indure labour, and gather their hony on hils: but the worser bees gather their hony of the garden flowres only, which be somwhat long of body, like to wasps. Virgil doeth especially commend the small bees, being somewhat long, light, and cleanly in their businesse, and glittering like gold: and the greater and rounder bee is discommended of al writers. Although the fierce bees are very ill, yet is their irefulnesse a note of the better bees, which may easily be appeased by the daily hanting among them: for if the keepers doe often handle the hiues, then doe they become gentle in short time. The bees also indure, if they be diligently loked vnto, for the space of ten yeares, & beyond this age no swarm can passe, although the keepers supply the hiues yearly with yong bees in the stead of the old dead: for in the tenth yeare, in a maner, by the generall death of them, the vniuersall kind of the whole hiue is then consumed. And therefore that this may not happen thorow all the hiues in that place, you must alwaies increase your hiues with yong bees, which diligently hiue in the spring time, or beginning of Summer, when as the swarmes be first and new thrust forth of the hiues: & so may the number of your hiues be increased. Again, some write that in the countrey of Pontus, the best bees be white, because they giue their yeld of hony twice in a moneth. And Guilielmus de Conchis affirmeth, the best bees to be about Thermedoone in Capadocia, abiding alwaies in the earth, for that those doe build and make a triple yeld of ware, and giue also most abundance of hony. The aforesaid Varro affirmeth, those bees to be in health, which often keepe and be in swarme together, that be cleanely, and can do their busines and worke alike, and that quicke and light in the same,

being

being neither hairy, nor foule of body, or appearing duskie; such also as be not ouer-cleane of body, nor that out of any of their cottages no dead bées be carried: but the contrary to be both euill and vnprofitable. Palladius declareth, that the best bées may be known by the fulnes and emptines of their vessels, for if the hiues be full, then those bées doeth he best commend: if the hiues be nothing so full stuffed, those bées doth he greatly disallow: and he also praiseth those bées which excell or passe other in the loudnesse of humming, or doe abound in the great hant of the swarme, not brought to the hiues from far places, so that there may be such agreement, that they be not after feared away with the newnes of the aire and place.

Where the hiues of Bees ought especially to be placed. Chap. 10.

ARistotle willeth the hiues of bées in the winter time to be placed in a warme place, & in the hot season of summer in a cold place. Palladius Rutilius in his first booke of husbandry teacheth, that the fittest place for bées, is that which is in a Garden, not far, or rather neare to the owners house, which by that meanes suffereth not the windes, nor the accesse of thieues or beasts: which also nourisheth trées growing of the Northside of the place, the better to defend the cold aire from them, and cleare springs or faire riuer water running by.

Columella willeth the hiues to be set open towards the South, far from noise and hant of people or beasts, neither in a hot nor cold place, for either of these do molest and harme the bees. Also that the hiues stand in the bottome of a valley, or if not so possible, then placed neare to the valley, the better and easier for the bees to bring their food gathered to their hiues; and in any case far from stincking puddles, ditches, dung-heapes, and such like filthy stinckes, which greatly annoy and endamage the bées being neare hand to their hiues. M. Varro writing in his second booke vnto a huswife of the Country, willeth also to set the hiues close to her house and vnder some shed, and that farre from the noise of fowles,

which is meant from a groue or wood, left thorow the wood or groue nere hand, the same may giue a sounding noise, like to that which men commonly name the Ecco, which sound in very deed the Bées do greatly hate. Virgil willeth bushy trées to be planted and stand right before their hiues, like as the Pear-trée is, the Peach-trée, the Oak-trée, many kinds of Apple-trées, the Birch-trée, Holly-trée, the Iuy-trée also, not allowed for their goodnes, but because the same giueth out much hony, and al other trées which beare no bitter flowers. And he willeth these plants and hearbes to grow neare hand, as the Rosemary, the red and damaske Rose, the white Lilly, the Violets, the Flowr-deluce, the Dytany, the Time, the running Tyme, the Sauery, sweet Marioram, the Saffron flowre, which colloureth the hony & maketh it smel sweet, the beane flowres, the French beane flowres, the Melilot flowres, the herbe Balme, the white Poppy flowres, the Betony flowres, the Borage and Buglosse flowres, and many other sweet and wholsome flowres not here named. But the Bore-trée, the Mastiche-tree, the Dog or Catten-trée, or as some suppose, the long and hie Cherry trée, they greatly hate, for that tasting of the flowres of any of these, they die forthwith. Varro willeth standing waters to be nere their hiues, and so shallow, that small stones throwne into them, may appeare aboue the water, to serue in stead of bridges for their often recourse vnto them, and that they may aptly stretch their wings abroad on the stones at the heat of the sun. The standing for Hiues ought to bee three foote distant from the ground, and wittily stopped about with redde clay, lest vermins and mice creepe into the hiues, and spoile the Hony combs. The hiues also ought to be set a little asunder the one from the other, lest by looking into them, you shake one another by cleauing together, and so disquiet the Bées next to, which feare all manner of shaking, lest the same throwe downe their weake workes of ware. And the mouthes of the hiues ought to stand somewhat lieper then the back part, lest raine beating in, might not lightly run out againe by their entry or hole: for remedy of the which, some make a couer o-

ner

uer their hole, the better to kéep off the foule weather. And no maner of heat so much hurteth them as doeth bitter cold, and for this the faces of hiues ought to be in the winter toward the rising of the sun, that the bées may so receiue the warme comfort in the morning comming forth, & be the liuelier: for cold doth cause them to be sluggish; and for that cause their holes ought to be very narrow, that as little cold as is possible may enter into them, and so narrow made that the Bées within may receiue the entry but of one Bée at once: for by that meanes can neither the Bétle, Butterflie, nor great moth enter to annoy them. Besides, for their often recourse home, Varro willeth to make two or three commings into the hiue, somewhat distant asunder.

What things bees do chiefly abhor, or greatly hate. Cap. 11.

TO bées, is that (named the Eccho) vngratefull or much displeasing, which as Pliny writeth, doth greatly feare them, through the strange sound rebounding againe, and the mist also doth much molest and trouble them: besids, the spinner through her web hanging downe before the hiue, and the sluggish Butterflie (which Pliny nameth dishonorable) are 2. waies pestiferous, as the one when he spoileth the ware, and dungeth within the hiue: and the other breeding magots or little wormes within the combs. They greatly hate oyle, like as al the kinds of other bées do, and a stinking sauour, which euidently appeareth by that kind of herbe named mugwort, which they especially hate, because the same is of a strange stincke to them. The hornets also of the like sort creast, but baser of kinde, they greatly feare, for that to the hornets the hony Bées are a speciall food: also they be meat to swallowes, to sparrows, and to all other small birds.

The frogs also they do greatly feare, which only lie in wait for them, both in Marishes, running springs, shallow waters, and little ditches: and likewise the todes doe lie in wait for the bees, which destroy many of them. And the shéepe doe greatly trouble the Hony Bees, if so be they happen to fall or light into the wooll of their backes, out of which they cannot easily wind or get themselues againe.

And

And if any happen to boile or seeth Riuer Creuisses (or Sea Crabs) neare to the hiues, and that the bées feele the sauor thereof, they die forthwith.

By what signes men may know when the hony bees are diseased, and how men may cure them. Chap. 12.

THis is a speciall argument and note that bées are diseased, if that they flie scattering in the swarme, if they kéep not their proper colour, but be (as it were) of a strange and contrary colour, if they also are ouer leane, if they appeare dusty and hairy, and that out of their cottages be dead bees caried thence. When all these notes and signes are espied in the bées, it is then high time to seeke remedy for them, lest helpe (by longer running) be sought too late. Therefore Palladius willeth to minister the kernels of Pomegranets, bruised and mixed with sweete and pleasant wine, and the same powred into chaunnels or gutters of halfe canes, set neere to the mouthes of hiues: or hony with Rose leaues well beaten together, and so ministred to them: or the berries of the Saruice tree bruised, and mixed with hony: and for lacke of these helpes, a man may make a smoke of drie Dre or Cow dung, which smoke much delighteth and comforteth them, so that the same be often vsed vnto Harueft. But if through the Waggots or little wormes of butterflies the bées be diseased, Rutilius then iudgeth it best, to set a brazen Candlesticke, or such like vessell, with light burning in it at Euening within the hiue, that to the same light (the butterflies gathering, and flying about) may so fall downe into it, and be destroyed.

Aristomachus writeth, that the diseased bées may be recouered in this maner: if that all the corrupt combe within the hiue be taken forth, and fresh food anew put in for the whole, and the hiue after smoked within. Also he affirmeth, that Rosemary sodden with water and hony together, and being cold powred into halfe canes or elder sticks made hollow like gutters, and the same set by the mouthes of the hiues, for the bées to drinke on, doth recouer the bées againe. Hyginius affirmeth, that either one or mans vrine set in like manner (as

aboue said) by the mouthes of the hiues, doth also recouer the diseased bées. Now al these must the keper of the bées do, which is both sober and chaste, and feedeth not vpon lowe meats, nor filthy or strong of sauour, nor any salt meats.

What maner of person the keeper of Bees ought to be. C. 13.

THe bées, for that they much abhorre all filthy stinks and smels, Palladius willeth the keper of them to eschew diligently all strong and ill smelling sauours, one also that delighteth to be chaste of body, and free from filthines, amongst these not breathing sowrly, or of a stinking breath, not sweating, nor sauoring of sweat, not one beside of wicked conditions, or such a person as standing among the sight of the bees, doth not earnestly moue and procure them to flie to him, or as one stinged endeauoureth to defend himselfe from them: but rather as a flatterer among his acquaintance and children, hath learned to intreat and please the bees by a more gentle manner. He also which mindeth to haue in a readines, the hiues to his vse, in which he may receiue forthwith the rude youth of the swarmes, for forthwith if they be not diligently preserued they flie quite away at the full heat of the sun. But how these hiues ought aptly to be prepared, shall hereafter be taught in the sixteenth Chapter. If the Dore bées be ouer many in the hiue, and that you would gladly rid them forth, then do on this maner: first take and plucke off the wings of one of those Dore bées, and put into the hiue, and incontinent the hony bees espying the same, will fall vpon the other Dor Bées, and doth kill and driue them quit away.

By what subtile meanes, the swarmes being come foorth, may be preserued from flying quite away. Chap. 14.

PAlladius in his second booke writeth, that the swarmes of the hony bées flie away especially in the moneth of June: but with vs the same oftner happeth in the moneth of May, as hath beene noted by sundry diuers times, especially if the yong bees be sound and hearty within the hiues. Therefore the keper must diligently looke to the hiues, and at no time be absent, especially when the yong bées increase and abound in the hiues, for if they be not then carefully looked vnto, and

staied by the diligence of the kæper, they all flie quite away. For such is the nature and propertie of the bées, that assoone as the swarme of the yong bees are bred with the kings, and that they be strong & able to flie away, then as disdaining the swarms of the old bées, they seeke the more gouernment. For they be such liuing things as delight to rule alone, not seeking aide or counsel of the elder bées: & therefore do the new kings flie forth with the yong swarms following them, which for a day or two before their flying, remaine heaping together before the mouths of the hiues, & right vnder the hiues, so that by their cõming forth, & heaping in such order, they properly shew the desire of a new place, and be as yet contented to remain therabout, if the kæper prouide for them a fit place. But if they be not diligently regarded, then (as it were by an iniury receiued) they seeke a new place. To preuent this, let the kæper loke circumspectly to the hiues in the spring time, about the eight houre of the day (when the swarms are not yet flowen away) that he may the diligentlier marke and see the flying out and comming in of the yong bées.

Now the readines of bees in flying away, is knowne two waies: First, when for certain daies before, in a maner at the setting of the Sun, they abundantly gather on a heape right before the mouth of the hiue, like great clusters of graps, and hang together one vpon another: the other note is, that when they be minded within three daies after to flie away, they make as marueilous a noise and stirring to & fro within the hiues at euening, as souldiers at an alarme within a Castle, which you may easily know (this readines of them) if that you lay your eare to each hiue. And when some of the Bées are flowen away, then doe those waile for the others, vntill the whole swarme be come together. To kep Bées from flying away, Pliny teacheth in the 11. booke of his Natural History, that the hiues ought to be nointed about with the iuice of the herbe Balme. Also other affirme, that the swarme doth settle and stay againe, through the onely throwing of fine dust on them, if so be the same be throwen on light, and that ouer the Bées. Some others affirme, that the Bées will not

flie

flie away, if the dung of a first calfe of any cow be smeared about the mouthes of hiues. Pliny writeth, that by the onely binding ỹ fresh white vine (running in hedges) round about the bodies of hiues, it staieth the swarme from flying away.

Of the Bees new setled in a swarme together, and taken or recouered againe. Chap. 15.

When the bées are now in a tumult in the aire, by throwing fine earth on high ouer the bées, or ringing a bason or kettle, they be with the shrill sound astonied, that they may the sooner settle down neare the keeper, which if the same happē to be on the branch of a trée, or on a graft or yong set, then with a sharp saw, gently saw that offe lay it on the ground, and spéedily set a hiue on the same prepared for that purpose: for by that meanes (without doubt) will the whole swarm flie vp to the top and head of the hiue. Yet it often happeneth, that they do not wholy cleaue on a heap to the branch of a tree, but to the stocke or body of the tree, which to be cut, must be by great force, and so not able to be recouered by this meanes. In such a case the swarme must be quickly swept off, either with the hand, or with a Goose wing, that they may so fall together into the hiue. If the swarme happen to be clustred together on the top of a tree, so high that they cannot be climed vnto, to take them downe then, after the shaking of them into the hiue (turned vp) either with a pole, or high forke, the hiue must speedily be turned downe to the earth. And if they be but thus taken or recouered, yet if the king shall be still in the hiue, then doth the swarme flie in againe: where if he remaine not, then will none of the swarme abide in the hiue, but flie forthwith into the former place. Wherefore that they may be moued to abide, you must then sprinkle the hiue with water and hony together, and couer the same within with greene Nettles, or rather greene Fennell, or some such sweete herbe, annointed a little with hony, and after set at the Euening in their proper place. For the hiue in the day time, after the recouering thus of the Bees, may not be stirred vntill the Euening, that the Bees so quietlie resting all that night, may in the Morning easily goe forth,

but for three daies together (in a maner) must the keeper daily looke whether the swarme keepeth below in the hiue, for if it doth, then are the bees purposed to flie away. And if none of all these remedies may yet moue the bees to stay and tarie in the hiue, then besmoke the hiue with flaxe, and they will after enter in and abide in the Hiue: which so staying in the Hiues, set at the Euening in his proper place. Here learne a further instruction, that if the swarme of Bées cannot be gathered and recouered together all at one time, then may you gather the swarme at two or more times together, and alwaies put each part gathered vnder the hiue. If it hapneth that you haue gotten the king with a part of the swarme, then will all the others soone come to the hiue (without further trauell) of their owne accord. If the Bées be also entred into the hollowe of a tree, then to the hole which they vse to go in and out at (as their proper doore) set a prepared hiue, and beneath their hole, neare to the roote and bottome of the hollow (as you can gesse) bore another big hole, that ye may well put in a smoke of brimstone to them, which may so cause all the bées to flie out at their hole into the hiue, set ouer the mouth of it: for no better deuice or inuention can bee made in this matter, then by such a smoke made. If the same hollow tree be so thin, that it may easily be sawed asunder, then with a sharpe saw let the hollow part be cut asunder, both aboue and beneath, and after couering it with a cleane sheete, carry the swarme home, which at euening couer with a new hiue, sprinkled with water and honie mixt together. For so they will tarry the willinglier, being all shaken forth of the bodie of the tree, and couered with the hiue. Besides, the hearbe Mugwort (which the bées by a naturall hatred do abhorre) doeth chase them with the onely smell from place to place.

Which are the best and fittest Hiues for the Honie Bees. Chap. 16.

PAlladius writeth, that the best hiues be those, which bee made of the barkes and light corkes of trees, because they be neither too cold in the winter time, nor too hot in the Summer.

mer. And of this, those hiues which be wrought and made of the small Osier or willow tree, or of the vine stickes knit together, or canes cleft in the midst (which be of like condition to the barke) wrought close together, and stopped close about with flocks and clay tempered together with water and salt, may aptly serue if you will. But if neither of these fashioned hiues like you, then may you make the hiues of the wood of a hollow tree, or of light boords made square, and stooping somewhat afore. The worst hiues be those which be made of turfes or earth, because they be ouer hot in the Summer, and ouer cold in the winter. There be other two kinds of hiues, as the one made of drie hard cow dung, and the other of tiles. Of which the one doth Celsus rightly condemne, because the same is so lightly burned: and the other he alloweth, although he dissembleth the speciall commodity of it, because the same, if need requireth, cannot easily be remoued and carried into another place.

And among these, I suppose our forme of Hiues heere in England, are not altogether to be disallowed, although they be in like danger to bee easily burned, as the other hiues aboue taught, in that they be made with straw. But to be briefe, for a great swarme you ought to haue in a readines a great hiue, and for a small swarme a little hiue. And the hiue also ought to be a foote and a halfe, or two foot high, and in breadth aboue two foot and a halfe, or somewhat larger: hauing besides two very small and narrow holes, somewhat asunder, and so little ought the mouths to be, that neither beetle, butterflie, great moth, humblebees, Cuet, nor mouse may enter in to spoile the hony combes. Some suppose, or rather affirme of experience, that the Bees are delighted with this closenes, in that they more ioy to do their works and busines in the darke then otherwise.

Of the cleanlinesse and sweetnesse of the keeper of Bees, and how Bees ought to be fenced about, and prepared within. Chap. 17.

The keeper of bees, which mindeth to handle and look into hiues, ought the day before to refraine the veneriall Act,

not a person fearefull, nor comming to the hiue with vnwashed hands and face: and one that ought to refraine in a manner from all smelling meats, poudered meates, fried meates, and all other meats that doe stincke, like as the Leekes, the Onions, the Garlike, and such like, which the Bees greatlie abhorre: besides, to be then swæt of body, cleanlie in apparell, minding to come vnto their hiues, for in all cleanlinesse and swætnes the bees are much delighted. Now thus prepared, and in a readinesse, vpon the hiues first of the Bees, about the 8. or 10. day of April, being then a cleare and warm day, and purge the hiues of al such filth which is gathered in them all the winter before, like as Spiders webs, which ought especially to be wiped away, because they corrupt the combs: not with hands, but with a Owle wing, the same ought to be done. After that, the hiue ought to be smoked with Ore or Cow dung, for in that (as it were by an affinity of the kind) doe the bees greatly delight. The little wormes also, which some name Waggots, that breed in the combes through the blowing of the butterflies, and also the butterflies ought to be killed and purged out of the hiue. If the combes happen to fall through infection or corruption in them, then make a smoke with the dry dung and marrow of an ore or cow, mixt together, that the sauour may go vp to them, which for that time will cure the weake combes, strengthen the Bees, and cause them to worke the lustier afterward. And from the beginning of May, vnto the last of June, the hiues ought diligently to be looked vnto, that the yong swarms flie not away. Also from the tenth of June, vnto the tenth of August, the hiues ought to be opened now and then, and to bee smoked with such like as afore is taught. Which although it be grieuous for the time to bees, yet the same is very profitable, and strengthning them. And from the beginning of the Dogge dates, vnto the eightæenth of September, ought the bees to be carefully looked vnto, and defended from the violence of the hornet bees, which often wait before the mouthes of the hiues, to set vpon and eate the hony bees. Now the kæper in a faire Sunny day, ought to cleanse the hiues of all manner

ner annoyances, as before is taught, and diligently to stoppe the chinckes and clefts about, sauing the mouthes of the Hiues, with Dretung and clay mixed together. And this ought to be done for two or three daies before the change of the Moone, the better to defend the butterflie and others from creeping in. The hiues besides ought to haue two big sticks cleane scraped, and running a crosse from side to side, and sprinckled round about within with sweete and pleasant wine, or else the sticks to be hard rubbed ouer with the green branches of Fenell, or other sweete smelling hearbs, or with a little hony and leaues of the Pear-tree together, or with the branches of the herb Tyme flowring, or Sauery, or marioram, or the hearbe Balme and hony together. Some annoint the sticks and hiue within with sweete Creame of new Cow milk, or with water and hony sodden together, and that sprinckled about within the hiue, that the Bees may be the rather and sooner moued to tarrie and dwell still in their Hiues.

How Bees lacking hony, may be fed in that present need. Chap. 18.

BEcause the boisterousnes of the aire doth sometime constrain the bees to abide in their hiues, and that they may not onely feede of hony, but at the rising of the constellation, (named Vergiliæ) they may be fedde and cherished, and the same done in this manner without great cost. As first, if you take the number of ten figs, seething them in fiue pintes of faire Conduit or spring water, vnto a pint wasted, which after set on one side of the hiue within, laying many small sticks a cresse ouer the liquor, that those may serue in stead of bridges, the apter for them to drinke of the liquor without drowning in the same. Others will to seeth hony and water together, and the same to be powred into dishes set at the one side of the hiue, in the which they will to put fine carded wool, that the bees may the better drinke now and then, and be not cloyed with too much drinking of the licor, by lighting into it. Others take figs and raisons, beating them together, & after boiling them in the sweet liquor named Cuyte,

they

they powre into dishes, couering the same with oaten straws a crosse. Others also will to take a little hony, putting into the same a few oate cornes, that the bees lighting on them, may so keepe their wings from wetting in the lequor. Now all these meanes may well suffice to cherish and feed the bees in the winter time, lacking then food, being set neare vnto the mouthes of the hiues. So that if a longer hunger oppresseth them, then with the hiues fast by the entring in, set little gutters made of halfe canes, or great elder sticks cleft, into the which powre of the sweete liquors aboue taught, for by that meanes may they be well recouered and strengthened in the deepe of winter, when their food faileth them. Some will to put fresh birds cleane drawn, or the flesh of a hen finely shred into hiues, for the bees to feed and sucke vpon in the deepe of winter: and fine feathers also they will to put into the hiue, that they may giue them a warmth vnto the Bees lying in them. And others also will to put the meat of rosted chikens into their hiues to feede and sucke vpon, and not the bones withal, lest the sauour of the bones after the meate eaten off, might annoy the bees by lying still in the hiues, in that they so greatly abhorre all sowre and stincking sauors. Also these kinds of flesh ordered (as aboue said) may well serue bees in a drie Summer, when as the most flowres are then faded or quite gone away. Here note, that in the spring and Summer time, the Bee hiues ought to be looked vnto thrice in the moneth, gently smoking the Bees to cleanse the hiue of all maner of filth, and to sweepe forth the wormes. And Menecrates willeth the keeper of bees to kil the king black of colour, which by his malice disquieteth the other king, and corrupteth the hiue, in that he flieth out alone, or with a company of the bees following: so by that means (as Virgil writeth) shall the battell of bees be staied.

Palladius writeth, that the swarmes be increased in the moneth of May, and that in the outmost sides of the combes be the drone bees bred, which ought to be killed, in that those doe much disquiet the rest of the swarme. The butterflies also doe abound, which bee willeth diligently to kill, for their

their great annoyance vnto the hony Bées.

About the beginning of November ought the hiues then to bee cleared of their filth, so that all the winter following they may neither bee remoued or opened: And this may not bee done but in a warme Sunnie day. The combes may not be touched with hands, but with the feathers of a stiffe Goose wing, or such bigge fowle. After that to stoppe the chinckes round about with Oxe dung and clay finely laboured together, and to lay straw thicke ouer the tops of the hiues, the better to defend the Bées from the colde and tempests.

How the dead Bees may be restored to life againe. Chap. 19.

THe keeper of Bées ought to fore-see and take héede, that the Bées perish not through ouer great heate, or ouer mighty colde. If at any time by a suddaine showre in the séeking for food, bées happen to be beaten down, or nipped with a suddaine cold (which seldome so commeth to passe, that the hony bees are so deceiued) that harmed with the drops, they lie groueling and flat vpon the earth, as dead in a manner, then gather such bées together, putting them into some vessell for the nonce, which after set in a warme Chamber or Parlour, and couer warme embers (being somewhat more then hot) on the Bées, which gently shake with the Ashes, but in such sort that you touch them not with your hand: and setting the Bees in the Sunne, and neare vnto their hiues, they will after recouer and flie againe into their cottages.

Of the battell that Bees haue sometime amongst themselues. Chap. 20.

VIrgil writeth, that Bées sometimes minding to fight, do hastily burst out of the hiues, and (as were in ciuill batels among themselues) do fight like strangers one against the other, & smite eagerly in their fight one at another, if so be one hiue hath especially 2. kings bred vp in the same, which very well may be known, when as the bées clustred and heaped together, do represent or represse (as it were) the forme of

two beards hanging downe. Now their readines to fight is knowne, when in the aire is heard a great sound and noise among the bées, like to the manner of trumpets whiles they fiercely and cruelly fight together among themselues, and in this battell they glitter with their wings, sharpen the stings with their beakes, beare forth their breasts, and about the king they gather and swarme: so that they shout with great noise, flying and dashing together, and that in heaps & round companies mixed or ioyned together, and great is the noise made among them. And to be short, in this strong and eager battell, many of them fall headlong downe, and that thicker then haile stones to the ground.

The kings themselues in the meane time flying in the midle fronts, doe fight with a fierce courage within themselues, and they are also seene to flie hither and thither among thick heaps and swarmes of the bées (like as valiant Captains are wont to do in the time of a battel) with their glistring wings and beakes, beating downe of the swarmes, here and there, and on each side of them of both parts: so that of themselues not giuing ouer this eager battell, vntill the one part forced to turne the backe to the other, doe flie away with expedition.

Therefore that this doubtfull battell in the meane time may be ceased and quieted betwéen them, the wise practisers wil that the képer of bées doe stay and appease this broile of them, by the casting of fine earth ouer the bées, while they be thus fighting, which (as the wise affirme) of experience doth forth-with pacifie the great stomackes and courages of both parts. But if this auaileth not, then with hony and water sodden together, or raisons in like order, or with any sweete liquor sprinkled on them, is their fury appeased, which doeth (as it were) with the pleasant swetnes, quiet the irefulnesse of the warriours, and with the same in this controuersie they are marueilously appeased. If neither of these remedies doe yet preuaile, then let the képer marke diligently those bees which fight in the front, and be most eager Captaines, that he may kill them with expedition, for by that meanes, and

with

with the other remedies aboue taught, may the battels and fight of the warriours be throughly ceased.

Now after the bées are thus quieted, and the swarme setled round on some grẽn bow next hand, then marke diligently whether the whole swarme hangeth downe like a cluster of grapes, which so séeing, declareth there to bee either one king or two, by good agreement reconciled, which let alone on such wise, vntill they flie backe vnto their proper home. But if the swarme shall be diuided into two or many round clusters, then iudge that there be yet many Captains left, & that their ire is not ceased, and in those parts where you especially see the bées to cluster most thicke and round together, there diligently seeke out the captains, yet annoint your hand before with the iuice of the hearbe Balme, that touching or handling the bees, they flie not hither & thither, after which put in your fingers gently, and seuering the Bées asunder, seeke diligently among them, vntill you find out the author and procurer of the battell, which you ought likewise to kill. Virgil writeth, that the kings sometimes flie forth for a vain delight, to sport them flying in the aire, which you may easily stay and let, if that you plucke off the kings wings, that he cannot afterward flie.

How Bees may be recouered and found againe. Chap 21.

IF so it happeneth, that your bées are flowen away, and that you be in doubt whether they be lodged neare hand, or far off, Palladius doth instruct and teach many goodly waies to find them againe. First he teacheth to take red lead, or red oker infused in water, or any other colour staining, and to carie the same with you in a little shallow dish, to such a spring or running water as the honie bees haunt, especially in the moneth of Aprill, and there sitting downe, await the comming of the bees to drinke, which after they be come, & there drinking, staine in the meane time such bees with a rush coloured red at the end, as you may well reach with the same, sitting yet still, and watching the comming againe of those bees marked to drinke, which if they shortly returne, then is it an euident note and token, that their lodging and

cottages be neare hand: but if those Bées are long before they returne and come againe to the place, then may you suppose and iudge them to be far off, and the distance you may gesse according to their long tarrying and soone comming againe. That you may easily finde the place where the Bees lodge, whether the same be farre or neare hand, Palladius teacheth the same wittily in this manner:

First he willeth to take one whole ioynt of a big cane or Elder sticke, stopped at the one end, and the other end left open to annoint within with a little hony, which lay neare to that spring or running water, that the Bées daily haunt vnto. Now when the Bees resort to the same, and that certaine be entred within the quill, through the sauor thereof, then stop the hole with your thumbe, letting one of the Bees afterward to flie forth, which diligently marke, and follow that way it flieth, for it will shew you part of the way vnto their home: and after you can see the same no further, then quickly set forth another Bée, whose flight in like manner marke and follow after, for that it may also shew part of the way to their home: and so let flie the Bees by one and one vntill they bring you vnto the place of the swarme. Now if the same place be deepe in the earth, then with a smoke made either of drie Flaxe or Brimstone, driue the Bees out, and when the swarme is come forth, then ring on a Bason or shrill pan, for being by and by feared with the shrill sound of the same, the swarm either lighteth on a yong tree, or on the opener bough of a big tree, which so found out, couer ouerwith a hiue prepared for the nonce. But if the swarme be placed in the hollow of a tree, and hauing boughes, or in the stock of the same tree, then with a very sharpe saw (if the meanes of the same will giue leaue) cut it asunder: and in such sort, that the part empty aboue the Bees be first cut, and the part beneath, in which it seemeth the Bees to be lodged, to be likewise cut asunder, and the stocke thus cut asunder at both the ends, couer with a faire sheete, lest any lagge clifts appeare after the cutting, which also annoint with hony, for the better staying in of the Bees, and after carry the same home

which

which place by your other hiues, making small holes in the same, for their flying in and out (as afore was taught) in the ordering of the other hiues. But it behoueth the diligent searcher, to chuse the morning times for the finding out of Bees, whereby you may haue the space and liberty of the day before you to find out their resort: For by looking late after them, it falleth out, although the Bees are neare hand, yet because they haue then done their busie and carefull labour, they flie no longer abroad to seeke food, nor yet resort to drinke: through which it so commeth to passe, that the searcher after Bees knoweth not then how neare, or farre off the swarme is from the spring or running water. Some take the iuice of the hearbe Balme in the spring time, and annoint the same round about the hiue, whereby the sauor of the iuice may cleaue and abide on the vessell, which afterward being faire within, sprinkle about with a little hony, setting the same hiue downe neare to the wood or groue of trees fast by that spring of water running by it, and after the same be filled with a swarme, carry it gently home. Yet doth not this like, but in such places where the swarmes of Bees doe abound, for that oftentimes it so happeneth, that vnlesse the hiues be daily watched, such as go by doe take them away. But to lose some hiues greatly hindereth not, so that you may in the meane whiles enioy one or two of the full.

Now hitherto hath bin sufficiently taught such remedies and helpes, as necessarily serue to the taking and recouering of Bees lost, and otherwise to finde out most strange swarmes.

That Bees sting no person comming neare their Hiues. Chap. 21.

PLinie in his 20. booke writeth, that the hearbe Sperage bruised and mixed with oyle, and one beeing annointed with the same, doth defend him from being stinged by comming nigh to their Hiues. And in his 18. booke he also writeth, that if any man happen to be stinged by a scorpion, that he shall neuer after be stinged of any bee: but yet being sting-

ed, he teacheth to drinke the iuice of hearbe grace and Rew, mixed with wine, and to lay the leaues also in plaster forme on the stinged place. In the xvi. booke he writeth, that Bees stings are by nature venemous, against the which he teacheth to take and vse the iuice of Mallowes, or the iuice of Iuy leaues, and to annoint either of the two on the stinged places, as a soueraigne remedy. And in the 23. booke he teacheth, that wine boiled with Bay leaues, and after drunke, is a very good remedy. In the 24. booke he teacheth, to take a drop of that molten, which the hony Bees make at the entry of the hiue, to be a like remedy as the water Bezoar to bee vsed against venemous bites. Auicen in his second rule teacheth, that the decoction of the March Mallows, with vineger or wine, and the same annointed on stinged places, to be a perfect remedy: which also in his fourth rule affirmeth, that the hony Bees haue like dispositions vnto the waspe, saying that they leaue their stings behind them: wherefore for remedy of the wasps, you may vse those which we haue afore taught against the stings of Bees.

When and how the Hiues ought to be gelded.

Chap. 23.

PAlladius Rutilius in his first book teacheth, that the hiues of Bees ought not to be gelded, before you well consider and see whether they be ripe, vnto the comming of the true hony, which in a manner (as he teacheth) commeth to vse in the moneth of June, or as others affirme, in the ende of August, vnto the middle of September.

Now there be certaine notes and tokens by which we try and find out the ripenes of them, which be these: First, if the hiues be ful, then do the hony Bees driue forth the idle drone Bees out of the hiues, and there is also heard within a small or shrill humming of the Bees, for that the empty cottages of the combes (as it were hollow buildings) doe receiue a sound and noise procured then bigger, so that when there is hard a big and hoarse sound of the humming of them, then is it not yet meet to geld the combes. Varro writeth, that it is then time to geld hiues, when as you see within, that the

Bees

Bees hang clustring round, and that the holes of the hony combes be couered ouer (as it were) with thin caules, for then be they full of hony. Now the day of gelding the hiues, ought to be done timely in the morning, when as the bees are astonied through the colde aire, and not done in the heate of the day, when they be procured to flie forth of the hiues, and being then very angry to sting those persons which come to the hiues. The manner of gelding of the hiues is after this wise: First, stoppe the holes of the hiues, that the Bees passe not forth, with grasse or some other hearbe, after that put vnder fine linnen rags or straw, making a little smoke with the same, which smoke so flying vp causeth the bees after to breake, and leaue their clustring together.

After these, with two instruments or toles of iron (made for the only purpose) of a foot and a halfe long, or rather somewhat longer, of which the one ought to be a long knife, and broad of either side the edge, and hauing a crooked file on the one end, the other at the beginning plaine, and very sharpe, whereby with this the combes may the readier and quicklier be cut downe, and with the other scraped cleane: and whatsoeuer filth falleth off, draw away, and throwe aside. But where the hiue of the hinder part, or part behinde, shall haue no voyde place empty, then make a smoke (as Varro commandeth) with Galbanum, and drie Ore dung, which ought to be made in an earthen fuming pan, filled with quick coles, or a pan of earth with a narrow mouth, and a handle like to it, so that the one part ought to be sharper and narrower vpward, by which the smoke may passe by the little holes, and the other part where the coles are broader, and with a large mouth of the one side of it, by which the person may blowe the coles. Now such a potte when it is set within the hiue, and the smoke stirred vp vnto the Bees, they by and by vnquieted with the sauour, flie vnto the fore-part of the hiue, and sometimes flie quite out of the hiue, whereby any may looke into the hiue (in a manner) without harme. If there happen to be two swarmes in one Hiue, then are there also two kindes or formes of honie combes: For euery

company

company of Bées in a grément together, doth fashion and frame the ware as liketh them best. But all the hony combs being hollow wrought, and a little cleauing vnto the sides of the Hiue, doe hang, whereby they may not touch a floore or board, for so it causeth the swarmes to flie quite away: and the forme of their ware is such, as the condition of their cottages is. For some bées do make both square and round spaces, and some long, so that each frameth (as it were) certaine formes in the combes according to his kind, whereby the hony combes are not found alwaies alike in fashion: but these combes of what forme soeuer they be, are not to be taken all out of the Hiues. For in the beginning of Haruest, whiles the fields yet flourish, take a fift part of the combes, but after, when Winter is at hand, then leaue a third part behind.

Palladius willeth the hiues to be gelded in the moneth of October, and that a third part be left behind. Yet consider that if there be store, to make the more, if but a meane, then the halfe part of that leaue for the winter time: if the cottages appeare but halfe full, then take nothing away. Varro teacheth, that a third part of the combes may be taken away and the other part left for the winter, although the combs be full of hony: if you feare (saith he) a sharpe winter to follow, then take nothing at all. Of the same minde is the learned Virgil: but the expert practisers of our time in such matters do affirme, that the hony ought to be taken away but onee in the yeare, and this in the end of the moneth of August, vnto the middle of September. But the ware being corrupt, then both before, and at any time may be taken forth of the Hiues.

Also as touching the honie which the Bees giue, whether you may take away either little or much, must be considered according to the smalnesse or plentifulnesse of that hony being in the hiue. And according to the smalnesse or greatnes also of the swarme to be nourished, so that aboue the fourth part of the combes may not be taken from any hiue, yet this order may not be vsed alike in all countries, because

a

a man must consider the dealing with the hiues, according to the multitude of flowres, & plentifulnes of food for the bées. If the waxie combes hanging downe, doe run into a length, then with the same iron toole, which is made like to a knife, being oftentimes dipped in water, that the waxe cleaue not vnto it, or that the combes remaining may be harmed, and the hiue holden on the one side, cut the combes away. After this, put both your armes into the hiue, gathering together, and taking forth the combes. But if the combes hang ouerthwart in the hiue, then must you vse your scraping yron, that the combes on the further side thrust together, may so be cut away. Also the olde and corrupt combes are to be taken forth, the whole and full of hony to be especially left. And if there be any yong bees in them, those keepe or preserue to increase the swarme in that hiue: after that carry all the store of the hony combes into one place, where as you minde to make your honie, and stoppe diligently the sides and edges of the hiues round about, that none of the Bées may enter in, which for the hony, and waxe taken away, doe eagerly seeke after, and finding the same, doe vtterly consume the same if they may. Therefore of the former matters must a smoke be made, and that at the entrie or mouth of the hiues, that the Bées assaying to flie in, may through the smoke bee driuen to flie backe againe. Now after their hiues be gelded, and that any shall haue ouerthwart and crossed combes at the entrance of the hiue, those then shall be so conuerted, that the parts behind may be emptied and left void for another time. So that when they shall be next gelded, the old combes rather then the new to be taken forth, and the waxe renued, for that the older the waxie combes are, so much the worse they be.

If it happeneth, that the hiue bee so made that the same may not be remoued out of the place, then ought you to geld first the hinder part, and after the forepart: and this especially ought to be done afore fiue a clocke in the morning, and after nine of the clocke at night, or in the next morrow. Now the bées when they know this, al come to fil the empty place,

so that after they haue repaired and filled the same, and fulfilled all the rest about it, then flie they to the forepart, and do worke in like order. By which we may euidently learne, that they haue filled the same emptie place also, by their abiding still there. Besides these, as the great plentie of honie doth cause sluggishnes in the Bees, euen so doth the much abatement, and exceeding taking away of their hony, both dull the quicknes and diligence of them, and cause them also to be sluggish.

What the Hony is, and how from the hiues the same may be prepared to vse. Chap. 24.

AS wee first gather the Honie from the combes, so doe we the ware for the comfort of light, and other commodities besides. Now what the Hony is, and how the same taken from hiues may bee prepared to vse, shall hereafter be taught.

First, the learned Isidore writeth, the Honie to be of the dew of some liquid matter, and affirmeth also the same to be found sometimes in the leaues of great Canes. To which in a manner doeth Publius Maro agree, in this verse writing, that hitherto the heauenly gifts are of the Aereall Hony. Others teach, the Honie in India and Arabia to bee like to salt, gathered there on the leaues of trees: others do doubt, whether hony be a sweat from heauen, or a certaine spittle of the starres, or the iuice of the aire purging it selfe. But whatsoeuer substance the same is, yet is it a most sweete, subtile, and healthfull iuice, as Pliny witnesseth, which at the first gathering of it is as cleare water, but after the boiling a while and purging of it selfe, as new wine (after the pressing forth) and doth from the twentieth day after, come to a perfectnesse of hony, through the often tempering of it in hot daies, from the beginning of May, vnto the middle of June.

Now the hony is gathered in this maner: First before the hony be pressed out of the combs, must those corrupt combs, hauing red filth, & hauing yong in them (if any such be there) bee pressed out, because they both procure an euill taste, and

with

with that iuice corrupt the hony. These combs bruised together, ought to be put into a clean presse, being yet warm, and new gathered out of the hiues the same day, which let lie there, vntill the hony by little and little be run forth, or rather for the more expedition pressed forth with a heauy waight, and the same which is then come, is very faire raw hony. After that, the hony with the ware muſt be boiled together, as hereafter shall be taught.

Now when the combes be thus bruised together, and the yong bées killed and cast forth, then muſt you make your hony in this maner: As first, in the month of September or October, take the heauier and olde hiues, which are of two or three yeares olde, and not hauing bred swarmes in the summer before: and that ouer smoke with a flame of straw, brie flare or yellow brimstone, the hiue being a little whiles holden that the Bees may so flie vp to the top of the hiue, or else such as remaine below burne their wings. After that turne downe the head of the hiue on the ground, and with a sharpe knife cut the crossed sticks asunder in the Hiue, or plucke them forth with your hand for by that meanes are the combs well bruised together, and the Bées either killed with the fall of them, or else flie away. After this, put all the combes on a heape, being gathered out of the hiues here and there, into a presse, leaning somewhat on the one side: but some put the combs into a wine basket made of smal willow or osier sticks finely knit and wrought together, that being hanged vp in a darke place, the hony may runne thorow by little and little from it. After that the hony hath thus run forth into a cleane earthen pan or bowle standing vnder it, then the same after poure into an earthen pot, or pots being as yet raw Honie, but clearer and better then the other liquor of the Honie: which for certaine daies let stand open, that the sweete liquor may bee thorowly cooled, and the same in the meane whiles often skimme or purge with a spoone. Now after this, the fine pieces or crummes of the combes, which yet remaine in the bagge of wicker, or wine basket, or presse, put into an earthen pot, pan, or kettle, ouer a very soft fire, that the

same may heat without boyling, alwaies keepe your hand in the vessell, to stirre still about hither and thither the hony and wax, and to open also the wax by peece-meale until the hony, and not the wax, shal be thoroughly molten. When the hony through the heat beginneth a little to pricke the hand, then poure all the whole masse or substance into a strainer, and putting the same in a presse made for the onely purpose, wring it hard about: yet it maketh no great matter, if the same be not so earnestly wringed or pressed out, that none of the honie remaine yet with the wax, seeing that the hony and wax haue effects in some causes alike. Now this hony, which is thus run forth, is named the sodden hony, which ought in like manner to be poured into earthen pots, and to stand open for certain daies, skimming it daily with a spoone, until it be thorow cold. The noblier or worthier hony, is that which runneth out in a maner of it owne accord, before the second pressing out of the combes. And mixe not of this second hony with the first, but keepe them diligently apart, lest by mixing the first vnto the second, you make the best (being the first) the worser. After all this thus handled, the same that remaineth in the strainer, wash diligently with conduit or faire spring water, that you may so haue the mulse or hony water, of which being sodden, and diligently skimmed (as of this hereafter shall be further taught) is the mulse made, that serueth to many good vses.

Which Hony is accounted best. Chap. 25.

CErtaine Countries do excell in the perfect goodnes of hony, like as the famous Attica of Greece, which for the excellencie of the hony, is had in great reputation thorowout the world. Hybla also and Hymetus, being hils of the same Country, which the deceiuers apply to hony, that the same may both be named Hymetus and Hybleus hony. Creta, Cyprus, and Affrica, as in goodnesse they are notable and worthy, so the abundant or marueilous plenty of the honie is there commended. Also the newnes of hony is likewise commended as the ancientnesse of wines, but chiefly the spring and Summer hony, especially if the vessell or hiue stand in a

valley

valley or bottome, and doth excel in the waight of hand. But the hony gathered of bitter hearbes is counted vnprofitable, as that same hony which the bées gather in the Countrey of Pontus, where the bées onely gather their hony of the wormwood. The white in all countries is better estéemed then the blacke, but the best hony is that which is very cleare, of a golden colour, of a most pleasant and sweet taste, cleauing somewhat to the fingers in the handling, and but little stirring or waring hard together, and that in the pouring forth, doeth strait-way breake herre and there, and squirteth or sprinkleth (suddenly as it were) sundry droppes abroad, which being on this wise, Pliny teacheth to be the triall and sure note of good and profitable hony.

Of the venemous Hony, and of the wonderfull Hony of Creta. Chap. 26.

IT so much forceth to vnderstand and know, what maner of food the same is, with the which the bées doe liue, as the poysoned hony also that may be gathered by them, whether it be euill or venemous. For the hony of Heraclea in that countrey of Pontus, hath beene for certaine yeares very dangerous, especially through a certaine hearbe growing white, which also vexeth their cattell by eating thereof, named of the dwellers there, Ægellothron. But by these notes is that hony found out, and tried to be venemous: as first, that the same is not thicke at all, the colour brighter or more glittering, and hath a strong sauour, mouing forth with often snéesing, and is also waightier. Also such persons as taste somewhat thereof, doe couet to lie or fall hastily on the earth, séeking for coldnes, and be all on a sweate, so that in such suddaine dangers, must some spéedy helpes or remedies be ministred: like as the olde Pulse of the best hony, and hearbe Grace, or other like confections, be often ministred vnto such persons. There is also another kind of venemous hony, in the border of the Country of Pontus, that for the madnesse which it engendreth, is named of the people Neonomenon: the same hony is supposed to be gathered of the flowre Rhododendros, which groweth plenty there in the woods. Pliny writeth of

a marueilous hony to bee in Creta, for that in Carina, being a hill of that Countrey, hee affirmeth a Honie to bee gathered which the flies will not touch, and supposed also to bee a singular Honie for the composition of euery medicine.

Of the miraculous worthinesse of Hony. Chap. 27.

MOst men in Italy prepare and make their medicines which they purpose to kéepe long with hony, so that hony preserueth euery thing from putrifying, which you would haue in safety, and to continue for a season through his clammines. And of this, ancient men did enbalme the bodies of the dead, which they would haue preserued, and to continue sound without corrupting many yeres, with hony onely, and the same they also smeared within the tombs or sepulchres of the dead, for the longer kéeping of the bodies. The selfe same writeth the learned Papinus, of the body of Alexander, which was likewise embalmed with hony. And not vnlike to this writeth Pliny, in the 22. Booke, and 24. chapter of his Histories of sundry dead bodies also embalmed with honie. And in another place of his Histories writeth Claudius Cæsar, that brought a monster out of Egypt into his country, which was also embalmed with hony. Athanæus also writeth, that bodies subiect to sicknesses, may both be kept frée from sicknesses, and from corrupting a long time, through the often smearing and anointing of hony of all the body. And the like writers report, that those of the Isle of Corsica, or Corsedoe, which liue a long time.

The Macrobians being a people in Affricke, named also Mœrein, do liue a long time (as certaine Authors write) because with the meate of hony, which is plentifull with them, they daily be fed, & vse continually. Some affirme, that Democritus being recreated by hony, with the onely breath and sauour of the hony made hot, liued (as they write) vnto 109. yeares. Aristoxenus writeth, that the table of Pythagoras was daily furnished with only bread and hony, and yet liued vnto the foure score and ten yeares of the Philosopher Heraclides.

clides. The hony also is found to auaile against surfeits, and of this accounted amongst medicines for the putting away drunkennes. Wherefore it is no marueil, that such thorowly skilfull in Physicke, when any be ouer-cloyed or filled with wine, do counsell first to empty their stomacks by vomiting, and after, against the force of the fume euaporating of the remnant of the wine yet remaining, they giue them to eate hony spread on bread, as it were by putting backe the euill, that it may so remedy and put away the grosse fume.

How profitable the vse of Hony is in medicines. Chap. 28.

First, the white hony is to be vsed in cooling medicines, but the yellow in heating medicines: also the nature and property of hony, is to cleanse and open, and to expell humours, therefore it is profitably applied in filthy vlcers, being boiled and anointed vpon. It closeth also lose and gaping flesh, through his wholnesse. And with Liquid, Allome, and Hony, sodden together, are Ringwormes, and cornes or swelling of the feet healed, by anointing therewith. Against the vncertaine soundings and noise of the eares, and grieuous paines of them, take the honie, ground with that salt digged out of the earth, and droppe warme into the eares: the selfe same killeth both nits and lice, by onely anointing the head therewith. Also the hony purgeth the eies dimme of sight, healeth swellings, and other defaults and griefes of the iawes, the swelling and kernels vnder the iawes neare to the throte, after the preparing to vse the same gargelled in the throte, and the mouth washed therewith. The hony eaten, causeth vrine, helpeth the cough (being cleane skimmed before) and the bite of a snake or adder. The hony also helpeth those which haue drunk vnwares the iuice of blacke poppy, so that against the same euil & danger they drink rosed hony warme. Also the same drunke helpeth the malice & danger of Mushromes eaten, & the bite of a mad dog, or melting in ỹ mouth, after the forme of an Eclegma. Yet all the sorts of raw hony be windy and swel the body, mouing a rumbling or noise in ỹ belly, procuring ỹ cough, easily conuerted into euil humors,

stopping

ſtopping the liuer and milt, through the clammineſſe, and is hurtfull to cholericke bodies, if ſo be the hony before (as Dioſcorides writeth) be not thorowly ſkimmed and cleanſed as the ſame ought to be. The hony alſo boiled, doth better nouriſh then the raw, yet leſſe moouing the belly to ſolubleneſſe, and to the ſtoole. And the hony of it ſelfe, or mixed with others, helpeth the ſore in the lungs, and all other diſeaſes of the lungs.

The hony is rightly miniſtred to ſuch as haue the impoſtume in the lungs, and the pleuriſie. And the hony in which dead bées are, is applied to the venemous hony. The hony drunke with wine, helpeth the corruptions which are engendred of the meat eſthes: but to cold and moiſt bodies the honie is more profitable, therefore very fit for olde perſons, as Galen affirmeth. And to perſons being twentie yeres of age, and of an vntemperate hotneſſe, or others hot of qualitie, the hony to them is hurtfull, becauſe it is ſoone conuerted into choler in them. Democritus was vpon a time aſked, by what meanes men might both continue in perfect health, and liue vnto very olde yeares? To which he thus anſwered: if ſo be men anoint their bodies outward with Oyle, and apply their bodies inward with hony. Further, hony profiteth weake perſons, being applied: as the Huſſe water, of which ſhal after be taught in the next Chapter. To perſons of cold nature, the hony may aptly be miniſtred in hot broth: but to hot perſons, miniſtred in warme broth, the hony is not rightly giuen. The hony mixed with Camphora, and lying to ſettle three daies before, with the which anointing the face, doeth ſpédily cleanſe the ſpots in the face, the like doeth the hony mixed with the gale of an Ore. The pure white hony cleanſeth the breaſt, ſoftneth impoſtumes, being as well without as within the body. The hony alſo mundifieth, openeth the ſtoppings of the liuer and milt, helpeth dropſie bodies, and ſtrengtheneth weake members. The Aromaticke hony much auaileth in ſundry diſeaſes, being thus prepared: as the pure red roſe leaues, finely clipped, and after boiled in pure white hony, being often and diligently ſkimmed: for

ſuch

such Honie doeth comfort and mundifie, dissolueth incleansing the clammie swellings, digesteth the flegmaticke and grosse humours: and drunke also with colde water, it bindeth the belly, but ministred with warme water, it looseth the belly.

Of the drinke of Hony, which is called Mulse water, or sweete water of the Romanes. Chap. 29.

By the answere of Pollio the Romane, to Augustus Emperour, we may euidently learne, that the Mulse made of hony, is healthfull drinke in strengthning the body. For Augustus on a time demanded of him by what meanes a man might liue to great yeares, and all that season frée from sicknesses? To whom he thus answered: that applying the mulse water within, and annointing oyle without the body, doeth worke the like. The Mulse truely is a drinke made of water and hony mixed together, which the Græckes properly name Melicrate, and some Hidromel, as the drinke made with wine vnlaied, or without water and hony they aptly name Oenomel. Now the Mulse water drunke, doth ease the passage of wind or breath, softneth the belly: and the long time of oldnesse, change it into the kind of wine, is most agreeable and profiting to the stomacke, but the same is contrary to the sinews: yet it recouereth the appetite lost, and is a defence against the dangerous drinke of Henbane, if it bee ministred with Asses milke. This drinke truly (Ægineta writing thereof) is thus made: let eight times so much water be mixed vnto your hony prepared, which boile or séeth so long, vntill no more some ariseth to be skimmed off, then taking it from the fire, preserue it to your vse. But Paul Ægineta affirmeth, that the Mulse profiteth nothing (in a manner) the cholericke, because the same in them is lightly conuerted into choler.

Of the drinke Oenomel, which is made of pure wine and hony. Chap. 30.

The Oenomel, which is a sweete wine made with hony, Ægineta teacheth to be good, not onely for the preseruation of health, but also to expell the torment of sicknesses,

and that which giueth not onely strength of body and courage, but the long race of yeares: also it expelleth an old griefe of the reines, being often drunke with parcely seeds. But the best Oenomell is that which is made of olde and tart wine, and the best purified hony, for the same doth lesse swell. The same also harmeth, being drunke after meales, but before taken, doth procure an appetite. Dioscorides teacheth the maner of making the Oenomell in this order: first he willeth to take one galon and a quart of wine, and mixing it with halfe a galon & a pint of the best hony, to prepare the same orderly. But some prepare or make the drinke spædilier to vse after this manner: as boyling the hony with wine, and after pouring forth the same into other vessels.

Of the singular water of Hony, gotten by order of distillation. Chap. 31.

The hony of Bees meet to distillation, ought especially to be white of colour, which before the distilling must bee mixed with pure, white, and well washed sand, but not drie in any case, after that put the same either into a common Rose Limbecke of Tinne, setting a haire Siue close vpon it, that it may touch the hony in the distilling, or else into a body of Glasse set into a pot of fine sifted ashes or sand, making at the first a soft fire vnder it, vntill the first water be come, which is white: and after the yellow water appeareth, then put vnder another receiuer, setting aside the white: and so long distil vntil the red beginneth to shew, at the appearance of which, put vnder another receiuer, letting that remaine vntill no more will come. Which red water being the last, serueth for sundry vses, as to die womens haire yellow, by often wetting the haire with a spunge, and drying the same in the hot Sun. Also it causeth faire and long haire, and stayeth the shedding of haire: besides (this third water) doeth cleanse the foul corruption and matter being in filthy wounds and old vlcers, if they be washed twice a day with the same, causing also new flesh to growe in those places, if you daily wash them with the said water, or otherwise dippe linnen clouts in it, laying them aptly on the sores. The selfe same

healeth

healeth places grieuously burned, without appearance of any scarre afterward, by often applying linnen clouts dipped in it. And the second water (being of golden colour) dropped in the eies, doth not only helpe swolne and bleared eies, but the pin and web in them, by the daily and often dropping of the same into the eyes. But as touching the white, and first water, there is no worthy matter mentioned in this place by any of the old practisers.

Another manner of distilling the hony, more at large taught. Chap. 32.

TAke a pint, or as much as you will of the pure rosed hony, which put it into a body of glasse, close couered & luted about, setting the same after into hot horse dung, with a square stone on the head, and couering it with the horse dung for 14. dates: after which time, take the body forth, setting it into a furnace of fine sifted ashes, well a finger bredth or more aboue the hony, presupposing on your part, that little pèces of flint stones be put into the hony, and then distilled with a soft fire into a receiuer, wel luted at the mouth, for doubt of the aire breathing forth. When the same beginneth to distil, then draw forth part of the fire (vnlesse you can otherwise gouerne your fire by the helpe of the furnace) which comming forth white, let so long distill, till there appeare yellow drops like to golde. Vpon the sight of this, set vnder another receiuer, keeping diligently this first water by it selfe, and increasing the fire, let that so long distil, till certaine white smokes appeare running into the receiuer, and that speedily take away, putting to another receiuer, which let so long distill, vntill no more will drop forth: and this last is of a ruby colour in rednesse, so that if a woman often wetting the haire of her head with this third water, sitting then in the hotte Sun, both to dry and wet them again, wearing in the meane whiles a large strawn hat with an open crown, to spread the hairs vpon for the speedier drying of them, which so ordering doth not only cause the hairs to grow long & very faire but dieth them in time so yellow as gold. Also to diuers other vses this red water serues, as more is taught in ỳ other chapter.

The white water (which commeth firſt) by waſhing the face orderly with it, doth cauſe it to become cleare and faire, and keepeth the ſkin from looking olde for a long time, as the ſame hath beene experienced often by the worthy Dames of Rome, Naples, and Venice. And the yellow like gold, being the ſecond water, doth eſpecially ſerue to this vſe, that if any perſon happeth to bee infected with the plague or peſtilence, then to take two ounces of this yellowe water of Aloes Epatick, of red Myrhhe, & of the eaſt ſaffron, of ech ten grains, and a leafe of the beſt golde; all which grind into fine pouder, mixing the ſame with this water, and after that giue it vnto the ſicke to drinke, which no doubt will both helpe this and many other diſeaſes.

The manner of diſtilling a water of hony, named the Quinteſſence. Chap. 33.

TO make this ſingular & pretious water, you muſt take two pounds of the pureſt white hony, being both cleare and pleaſant in taſt, which put into a body of glaſſe, being ſo bigge, that foure or fiue parts of it may remaine empty, the ſame luted ſtrongly about, ſetting the head after on it, and a receiuer aptly to the noſe of the Still. When you haue thus done, then make a gentle fire at the firſt vnder it, but after increaſe the fire or heat more and more, vntill certaine white ſmokes appeare in the head of the glaſſe body, which you muſt workmanly coole and turne into water, by the wetting of linnen clothes in cold water, and laid on the head and noſe toward the receiuer, for that turneth into a water ſo red as blood: and being all come, put it into another glaſſe, ſtopping the mouth cloſe: which let ſtand ſo long, vntill the water bee come very cleare, and in colour to the Rubie. Now being on this wiſe, diſtill the ſame againe in Balneo Mariæ, and ſo often repeat this, vntill you haue diſtilled it fiue or ſeuen times ouer, that the colour be changed in the end to the colour of golde: which then is moſt pleaſant of ſauor, and ſo ſweete, that nothing may be compared like vnto it in fragrantnes of ſmell.

The Quinteſſence doth diſſolue gold, prepareth it apt to

be

be drunke, and any Jewell put into the water, it doeth also dissolue the same. Also this is named the blessed water, in that giuing to any two or three drams to drinke, being at the point of death, doeth so suddainly recouer the person againe, as doeth the Quintessence of wine. And washing any grieuous wound or stripe with the water, doth in short time heale the same. Also this pretious water doth marueilously helpe the cough, the rheume, the disease of the Splene, and many other diseases, which would scarcely be beléeued. The water also ministred daily vnto a person sicke of the palsey, for the space of fiue and forty daies, will by the mighty helpe of God, and this miraculous water, thoroughly heale the disease. Also this Quintessence doth helpe the falling sickneſſe, and preserueth the body from putrifying, so that by all these we may learne, that this is rather a diuine water from heauen (and sent from God) to serue vnto all ages.

The manner of drawing and making waxe of the honie combes. Chap. 34.

The hony being drawne from the combs, although some bées hang on them dead, yet put altogether into a faire pan or cauldron into which powre so much water or more, as the quantitie of the combs be. This set ouer a soft fire, vntill the same be thoroughly heated and molten in the pan, and in the melting continually stir the same about with a big slatter, or some staffe, leſt the ware cleaue to the pannes sides through the flame or heat of the fire, and appeare burned: after, powre the whole substance into a course hairen bag, pressing it forth into a trough, or other like vessell made for the onely purpose, on which powre two or three kettles ful of hot water, that no dregges hang after on the ware, and by that meanes shal you haue the ware both pure and cleane. But if you will haue it cast into faire round cakes, and to be cleaner and purer, then melt the ware againe, and being molten, powre it into a cleane vessel, which washed likewise with hot water, (as aboue was taught) set after in the Sunne, by which meanes the cake will continue very long faire of colour.

What waxe is best allowed and commended.

Chap. 35.

WAx, being the food of light, and serving vnto innumerable vses of men, of al the kinds the same is best allowed and commended, which is both new made, meanely red of colour, somewhat fattie, smelling sweet, hauing some sauor in it of the hony, and cleare. Of the Waxe also of sundrie Countries, that in the Country of Pontus is well commended, and the same in the Ile of Creta: next to these is the waxe in the Ile of Corsica, which is made of the Bore tree, and supposed to haue some good effects in it for Medicine.

Of the great commoditie and benefite of waxe in Medicines. Chap. 36.

WAxe hath a meane among heating things, both in the coling, drying, and moistning, as writeth Galen in the seuenth booke of simples, and 22. Chapter, which properly helpeth the roughnesse of the breast, when it is ioined or mixt with the oile of Violets, for that it both molifieth or softneth the sinewes, and ripeneth and dissolueth vlcers. The quantitie of a pease in waxe swallowed downe of nurses, or such women as giue sucke, doth dissolue the milke courded in the pays. And ten little pieces of pure new waxe, vnto the bignes of a hemp seed, drunke down at one time, doeth cause the milke not to coure in the womans stomacke and breasts. If the privy place, or thereabout, of either man or woman, happeneth to swell, then by applying an ointment made of white waxe, it shortly asswageth and healeth the same. If any also happeth to be diseased with the bloody flixe, by stuffing a yong Pigeon with new waxe, after rosting the same, and eating the flesh thereof, doth in short time after stay the same. Also, if a quince made hollow and filled with pure new waxe, be after rosted vnder hot embers vntill the same bee tender, & eaten fasting without drinking after it, doth in like sort stay and helpe the perilous flixe, and scouring of blood. The waxe besides, serueth to al maner of plasters, ointments, suppositories, and such like.

Of

Of that which is a stay of the combes, and made for a defence of Bees from cold. Chap. 37.

THe same made of bées at the entry of the mouth of hiues, ought to be yellow of colour, and sweet smelling like to Storax, and drawn into a length like to Mastick, yea, that is rather chosen, because in heating and drawing it is principallest. For of it selfe this draweth forth thornes or splents of wood run déep into the flesh, by applying it plaster wise on the griefe: it helpeth an old cough, by making a smoke therof, and holding the mouth ouer it, and applied in the forme of an ointment on ring wormes, doth spœdily heale them. Now this matter (as aboue was taught) is the stay of the Hony combs, by which bées stop and kéepe forth all maner of cold, and other annoyances which might endamage them, the same also being of so strong a sauor, that some vse it in the stéede of Galbanum. M. Varro nameth it a refuge of Bées without their cotages, because Bées make the same at the entry of the hiue.

How to make Waxe white. Chap. 38.

WAx is made white in this maner: First that kind of wax (fit for this purpose) ought to be whiter & purer, and broken into little pieces, put after into a newe earthen pan, powring vpon it sufficient salt or sea water, and a little Niter brused, which séeth al together. When ỹ same hath boiled twice or thrice vp, remoue the pan from the fire, & the wax being thoroughly colde, take forth of the pan, and scraping off the filth, if any such hang on, put again into new salt water, seething it againe. And when the waxe hath so often boiled (as aboue was taught) then take off the panne from the fire, and in the bottome of a new earthen panne, melt it with cold water, which dippe by little and little into the waxe, drowning it a little, so that the water be aboue the Waxe, whereby the Waxe may become very thinne, and be the sooner cooled it selfe: then taking by and by out the mould or bottome, drawe first the round Cake off, and wetting againe the bottome in colde water, dippe it into the Waxe, and the same so long do, vntill you haue drawne of all that wax into cakes

cakes of like sort, which after stitch thorow with thred, hanging the cakes on a rope one from another, and that in the day time, often wetting them in the Sunne, but in the night time in the Mone light: and so long doe this, until the wax be white. And if any desireth to haue wax whiter then this, then let him doe the like as aboue said, but boile the wax oftner. Some in stead of the salt Sea-water, take strong Wine water, in which they boile the wax in the same maner twice or thrice, as aboue was taught. And Paulus Euerdus in his booke of Confections, teacheth the making of wax white two manner of waies.

How you may make red Waxe. Chap. 39.

That you may colour and make Wax red, take vnto one pound of wax, three ounces of very cleare Turpentine, if it be in summer, but if it be in winter, then take foure ounces: now these dissolue and melt together ouer a soft fire, and taking it from the fire, let it coole a little, after which put in Vermillion finely ground on a Marble stone, and sweet Sallet oyle, of each one ounce, mixing these well, stir all together diligently. But some in stead of Vermillion, do take red lead, which is litle commended, except there be three times so much of the red lead as of the Vermilion put in. And in the like sort may you make greene wax, if in stead of the Vermillion you take so much of green Copperas finely ground, as you did of the Vermillion.

How to draw a profitable oyle out of Waxe, for sundry vses. Chap. 40.

The Oyle of wax, is miraculous and diuine in working, because it serueth in a maner vnto all griefes. Reymond Lullo greatly commendeth this oile, approuing it rather as a celestiall and diuine remedy, and that this in wounds doth worke most miraculously (which for his maruellous commodity, is not so well allowed of the common Chirurgions) because this pretious oyle healeth a wound, be the same neuer so wide and big, (being before wide stitched vp) in the space often or twelue daies at the most: but those which are small this oyle healeth in three daies, by annointing onely on the cuts

cuts or wounds, and laying after linnen clouts, (being wet in the said oyle) vpon the wounds. For inward diseases the said oyle worketh miraculously (if that you minister or giue a dram at a time in white wine to drinke) and stayeth also the shedding of haire, either on the head or beard, by annointing the places with this oyle. Besides these, it is miraculous in the procuring of vrine, being mightily stopped, and helpeth also stitches and paine in the loynes, by drinking the like quantitie of the oyle aboue taught in white wine.

Now the making and drawing of this oyle is on this wise: First take a body of Glasse named a Retort, which strongly lute about with clay & flockes, diligently tempered together with salt water: after the body is thus fenced, and thorough drie, put in a pound or more of pure new ware, so that the said wax filleth not aboue halfe your body, and to euery pound of wax, poure in foure ounces of the pouder of red brick, finely brused, which after set into an earthen pot, filling it round about with fine sifted ashes or sand. After this, set the potte with the body in it on a fornace, making a soft fire at the first vnder it, and after encreasing a little more your fire, distill them so long, vntill all your oyle be come, which after a while will congeale in the receiuer, but it maketh no great matter although the oyle so doe, for it is neuertheless in his perfection: because that if you should distill it so often ouer, vntil it will congeale or stiffen no more in the receiuer, then shal you make it ouer hot, and so quicke in the mouth that it is not possible by any meanes to drinke it downe. But being once distilled, you may either giue it in Wine to drinke, or annoint with the oyle vpon any place of the body where you will, which will alwaies doe good, and hurt in no manner.

And in consideration of these aboue taught, you may euidently learne and perceiue, that this miraculous Oyle ought to bee had in great estimation of the common sort.

Another excellent way to drawe oyle of waxe, that greatly helpeth the colde Gout, the Sciatica, the swelling of the legs, and all other griefes proceeding of colde. Chap. 41.

TAke of pure new ware, so much as you list, which put into a pan ouer the fire to melt, and being molten, haue by you in a readinesse another pan wel glased, & cleane within, filled with good and perfect wine, into which poure your molten ware, letting it soke and drinke in well, and wash it often in the said wine: after this, take the ware forth, melting it againe on the fire, and being molten, wash the same againe in pure wine, so that euery time melting the ware, poure it into fresh wine, washing and soking it in the same diligently, and after wring it well with your hands: being vsed thus, melt and wash againe in the aboue said manner eight times together: then set the same forth (being a cleare season & aire) all the night, after which put the ware into a Retorte, with a little Mumia and oyle of Yperidon, or Saint Iohns wort, and a little old oyle: although without these it may do good, yet mixed with these, it worketh far better then vsed alone.

Now to returne to the former matter: This crooked body or Retorte, set in fine sifted ashes, & a gentle fire made vnder it vntill all the oyle do run forth, and in this comming forth of the oyle shall appeare all the foure Elements, the aire the water, earth and fire, which wil orderly appeare in the receiuer, right maruelous to see. And the oyle being thus fully drawne, worketh miraculously in all diseases which proceede of a cold cause.

The conclusion to the Reader.

THus gentle Reader I haue (I trust) fully satisfied thy desire in as many things as are needfull to be knowne: wherefore I commit this my little Booke to thy gentle iudgement. If thou maist receiue any profit or commoditie thereby, I shalbe glad of it: and if not, yet fauourably let it passe from thee to others, whose knowledge and experience is lesse then thine herein, that they may gather such things as to them are strange, though to thee well knowne before.

And thus briefly I commit you to Almightie

GOD.

Certaine

Certaine Husbandly Coniectures of dearth and plentie for euer.

Chap. I.

First consider and marke, that how the weather is a day before, the day present, and the day after the Suns entrance into the signe Aries, and such like shall the weather be (for the most part) in these three moneths, September, October, and November.

And lyke how the weather shall be at the Suns entrance into the signe of Leo, as the day before and the day after, and such commonly shalbe in December, January, & February, for if the winde shal then blow out of the North or East, and those daies drie, then shall follow a very cold season in those three moneths: but if the winde blowe out of the South or West, and that it raineth in those three dayes, then ice to follow in those three moneths. And if the weather in those three daies shall be neither wholly drie nor wholly moist, then shal follow an vnstedfast winter.

And like as the weather shall be at the Suns entrance into the signe Libra, as at the day of the entrance, the day before and the day after, such (for the most part) shall bee the spring in March, Aprill, and May.

And lyke how the weather shall be at the Suns entrance into Aquarius, at the day of the entrance, the day before and the day after, such (for the most part shall the weather be in June, July, and August.

And many ancient men affirme, that like as the weather shalbe whiles the Sunne is running by the signe Libra, and vnto the 20. degree of Scorpio, which time is from that day (named the exaltation of the crosse) vnto the day of al Saints, such for the most part shall the yeare following be, as in diuiding that foresaid time into twelue moneths, and that foure daies do answere to each moneth, of the which foure daies,

that each one of the foure doth declare the condition of the quarter following: and beginning also to reckon November as the first moneth of the yeare.

And the generall signes of dearth & plenty after the minds of the ancient husband men be these: as the ouer-much coldnes drying, the ouermuch moisture softning, the ouermuch heat greatly burning, and the ouermuch drinesse putrifying and working into dust: For when any of these qualities shall exceed in the proper time, but especially in that time which to the corne and fruits doe not agree, then shall dearth and scarsity both of fruits and corne ensue.

As for example, when the month of March shall be ouer moist and wet, which rather ought to be drie, and that the month of Aprill shall be drie, which then ought to be moist, doth after pronounce the penury of the fruits of the earth.

And if that part also of Summer shalbe wet, in which the corne doth then fal vnto ripenes, that rather ought to be dry, doth after signifie the scarsity both of corne and other fruits of the earth.

And the like may be said of the other constitutions, for which when the Elementall qualities shalbe in such a condition as doe best agree, then doe they promise both fruitfulnesse and plentifulnesse.

And if in the spring be signes of cold and drought, and that in the end of the spring neere the ful moone be frosts, then shal follow very small yelde of the fruits of the earth, and little wine that yeare following.

And if the spring be drie, then few shall the fruits of the trees be, yet good: and scarsity of corne shall be that yeare.

And if the spring shalbe cold, the fruits of the earth shalbe late ripe.

And if the spring and Summer shalbe ouer wet or milky or cold, with cloudy weather for many dayes together, whiles all the trees haue borne their blossomes, and the fieldes their flowres, and begin to shed their flowre, then shall follow the scarsity of fruits of the earth in that yeare, or else a verie great rot of them, and many sicknesses in that yeare.

And

And if the Summer be drier then cuſtomably, then ſhal follow the ſcarſity of corne, yet the Summer fruits ſhall that yeare be ſound, the fiſhes then die, and moſt ſharpe ſickneſſes ſhall raigne that yeare.

And if the Summer ſhalbe hotter then cuſtomably, then ſhall follow many ſickneſſes or diſeaſes, yet great plenty of the Summer fruits that yeare.

And if the Summer ſhalbe colder then cuſtomably, then ſhall follow a healthfull yeare, but the fruits of the earth ſhall late ripe that yeare.

And here further note of the ſpring, that if in the ſame ſeaſon of the ſpring, there ſhall bee a more plenty of all flowres and fruites toward then cuſtomably, doeth after ſignifie a ſcarſity of corne that yeare, vnleſſe the heat of Summer doth otherwiſe reforme the ſame.

And the wiſe and ancient huſbandmen haue obſerued, that when the winter ſhal ſend downe ſtore of raine on the earth, ſo that the ſame exceede not or bee too much, and that the March following be drie, and the Aprill wette by often ſhowres, and that the ſame parte alſo of Summer bee drie in which the corne falleth to ripeneſſe, then doeth the ſame promiſe a plentifull yeare.

And when that part of the harueſt ſhalbe faire and drie in which the wheate is ſowen, and the part of ſummer in which corne falleth to ripeneſſe ſhalbe faire and drie, the ſpring alſo meanly warme, doth then not onely promiſe fruitfulneſſe, but a plentifull yeare of corne.

And now the Harueſt moiſter then cuſtomably, doth putrifie the grapes, and cauſeth a ſmal yeld of wines that yeare with the ſcarſity of other fruits.

And alſo if in the latter part of harueſt it be moiſter, then in the yeare following ſhall enſue ſcarſity of corne.

And if the Harueſt be drier in the firſt part, then in the yeare following, ſhal Rie, and that ſmall graine named Pil, and ſuch like, be deare.

And if the harueſt be hotter then cuſtomably, then ſhal follow a diſeaſed yeare, and that dangerous.

And if the Haruest be colder then costomably, then shall follow the losse of the Haruest fruits, both in the store and tast of them.

And the winter cold and drie, is of all husbandmen commended, but extreame cold doth then slea the tree, especially those which ioy in a warme aire, as the Pomegranate tree, the Olive tree, the Lemmon tree, the Figge tree, the Peach tree, and such like.

And if the winter exceed in the extremity of coldnes, then doth it signifie harme, both to the Vine and Olive tree, the Cherry-tree, and the yellow Quince tree.

And if the Winter be hot and moist, then the same doeth pronounce an vnhealthfull yeare, and danger to seedes and fruits of the earth.

And the excesse quality, and distemperature of any of the foure quarters, is euill and dangerous to the fruites of the earth.

And the plenty of snow falling in due season of the yeare, doeth fatten the earth, (and if the others doe helpe) then doth it signifie the plenty of corne and other fruites of the earth.

And if any washeth their hands with snow, it doeth then make them study, in that the snow is ingendred of a vapour somewhat drie and earthly.

And the snow nourisheth sheep and other beasts, in that the snow is ingendred of moist aire, in which life consisteth.

And the snowe increaseth the corne and other growing things on earth, in that by his coldnesse it so doeth shut the pores of the earth, that the heat with the which the seedes of the earth be cherished, cannot then breake forth.

And the Snow heateth and cherisheth the earth by the thicke couering of it, and defendeth the greene wheat and other seeds sown, from the sharpe & vehement cold of the aire.

And the snow may be kept all the yeare vnder the earth, couered with straw, and profitable it is to mixe with wine in an hot Summer, and necessary also to cole the aire about sicke persons.

And

And the vnprofitable falling of the dew, mists, or fogs (especially when all crescent things doe bud forth, and shewe their flowre) as in the month of Aprill and May, as well on the trees, corne, and grasse, which beasts then feeding on bee greatly harmed through the dew fallen, and all other things also much harmed by the same, as hath bin often obserued by the ancient and wise husbandmen.

And in the ouermuch falling of raine, frosts, or haile, especially in the spring time, and in the winter time, whilest the corne is yet as grasse, the excesse of raine also doth then threaten the scarsity of victuals to ensue that yeare.

And the great plenty of beanes, after the opinion of the common husbandmen through much raine fallen, doth foreshew the scarsity of Corne, and especially of Wheat that yeare.

And a like iudgement may be giuen of the Oake and Holly tree, which if they beare plentifully, then a fruitfull yeare followeth, and contrariwise bearing but few, then a deare yeare of corne doth ensue.

And the great plenty of Grashoppers, wormes, and Caterpillers, appearing in their proper time more then customably, do not only declare harme to vines and seedes sowen, but to all fruits that yeare.

And the greater store of winds, not onely cause litle fruits, but scarsity of corne to ensue that yeare.

And a stilnes in a manner throughout the yeare, doth declare a likelihood of the plague to ensue shortly after.

And the ancient Hippocrates writeth, that when in the summer the North wind long continueth, and in the harueste the South wind, with store then of raine, it doth after threaten in the Winter the head ache, hoarsenesse of voice, the cough, consumptions or impostumes to ensue.

And if after a drie Summer (as write the ancient Physitions) the North winde doeth long continue in the Haruest, then the bodies of Women, and such diseased with a moyst sickenesse, do then in that season the rather recouer health, in that the drinesse of the seasons and winds is contrary to the excesse

excesse and the rottennesse of the humours by which the sicknesses were caused.

And if the Winter shall be hot and moist, and the spring cold and drie, then doth the same threaten sicknesse to men in the summer, and that women with child shall haue vntimely birthes of a light occasion.

And Hippocrates writeth, that when in the winter be longer Northerly windes, and in the spring longer Southerly windes, and that rainie and wet in the Summer following, then doth follow agues, and the diseases of the eies.

And when after a cold Winter, there be South windes and rainie in the spring, and that the Summer be drie, then in the Haruest following do aguesensue, paines also of the bowels, through the great scouring of the body, and sicknesses, with the which old men, diseased persons, and children be then more pained.

And when the South-west winde doth long blow about the end of haruest, then those persons diseased with a long sickenesse, doe shortly after die.

And a further knowledge of dearth and plenty of victuals, and of sicknes, may be had on this wise:

First in the end of Haruest, cut open two or three Dake-apples, loking whether there be in them either flies, worms, or spiders: and if in the Dake-apple be found wormes or magots, then they signifie (after the opinion of ancient husbandmen) both dearth and scarsity in that yeare.

And if in the Dake-apple cut open, be found like to flies, it doth after threaten battell to ensue that yeare.

And if in the Dake-apple be found like to spiders, then do they foreshew the plague or pestilence to ensue in that yeare.

And to conclude, the only proofe of the former taught, shall moue the Reader better to credite these.

An euerlasting Prognostication of the state and condition of euery yeare, by the onely Kalends of Ianuarie: written by that ancient learned *Leopoldus Austriacus*, and others, for the commoditie of the wise husbandmen.

CHAP. II.

When the first day of January shall happen on the Sunday, then the winter shall be temperate and good, yet windy, the spring wet, the summer dry, and the harueſt hurtful through winds. So that victuals shall be reasonable good cheape, plenty of wines, the good healthy and increase of shæpe and other cattell, and the indifferent plenty of hony, and the like plenty also of Peason, Beanes, Vetches, and the hearbs and fruits of the gardens. Also yong men shall die that yeare, and a discord to be feared betweene kings, or else some manifest perils to happen vnto kings and great Prelats in authoritie, and that diuers robberies shall be attempted that yeare. And if controuersies happen betweene Princes, then a conclusion of peace to be looked for in that yeare.

And if the first day of January shall happen on the Munday, then shall the winter be warme, the spring very colde, with snow and frostes that season, the Summer boisterous through windes, and haile oftentimes, and land flods shall be somewhere, and the harueſt very drie. So that sickneſſes shall ensue, through which many of the simple sort shall then die, & diuers also shall die through suddaine plague then hap-

ning: Also the likelihood of great alteration to ensue, and the ancient women to mourne, Kings to die, and a great slaughter to be feared by the sword: Also small store of wines, the death of Bees, and little hony that yeare.

And if the first beginning of January shall be on tuesday, then the winter shall bee long, and much snow in that season, and the likelihood of land floods, through much raine then falling: the Spring windy, the Summer very wette, and the Harueſt abounding in grosse and rotten humours (so that a most grieuous plague is to be feared, and especially of women) and the likelihood of many shipwracks, and very great cares and troubles to happen vnto Princes, with the scarsity of the fruits of trees: and corne shall be deare, and a suddaine death of cattell to be feared that yeare.

Also wood that yeare shall be deare, and the likelihode of fearefull fires, and that the plague to be grieuous that yeare. And yet there shall be plenty of Peason, Beanes, Vetches, and store of herbes and flowres. And there shall be plenty of hony, oyle, and wines that yeare.

And when the first of January beginneth on the wednesday, then shall the winter be warme and calme, the spring wette, and disposed to sicknesses, the Summer hotte, and the Harueſt vnprofitable, so that long sicknesses are to be feared, and the quarten Ague with them. Also yong men shall then be sicke and in iopardie of death, and women the like, and in sundry places shall happen a famine, with a great brute of strange newes. And there is also to bee feared the grieuous passions of the heart, the idlenes of minde, or rather distraught, and the diseases of the matrice in women: and yet the plenty of oyle and wines, but the scarsity of corne to be doubted that yeare.

And if the beginning of January be on thursday, then shal the winter be calme and temperate, the Spring windie, the Summer vnseasonable, and the Harueſt drie, so that corne and victuals shall then be deare, yet store of oyle and wines that yeare. And there is a likelihod of light sicknesses to happen vnto the common people, but more dangerous sickness

ses vnto the richer sort. And the bleerednesse of the eyes is also to be feared, and that yong children shall then die, battels procured, and the sedition of souldiers, and an earthquake to be doubted that yeare.

Also great talke of newes shall be in Kings and Princes houses, and great perils also to be doubted to happen vnto Princes in that yeare.

And if the first day of January happen on Friday, then shall the winter be very colde and drie, the Spring boisterous and wette, the Summer temperate, the Haruest more wette then drie: so that bleerednes and other diseases, with the filthinesse of matter running in the eyes, is to be feared, and the pin and web is likewise to be doubted to happen that yeare. And yong children shall then die: and a likelihood that yong women shall be allured vnto wanton loue, through the flattery and great perswasions of men. Also a suspition of battels to ensue in that yeare, and the plague and robberies then to happen. Also plenty of fruits is then promised, although much haile fall that yeare.

And if the beginning of January happen on Saterday, then the winter shall be windie and vnstable, the spring windie and vnconstant of weather, the Summer vnstable with many tempests, and the Haruest drie: so that victuals shall be deare, small store of corne, and little fruit that yeare. Also sheepe shall not well prosper in that yeare, and a likelihoode then of the death of swine, and that wood shall be deare.

Also there shalbe many tertian agues, and diuers other diseases reigning among men, so that olde men shall then die, and a likelihood of the death of many men by the plague. Also many fires shall be heard of, little store of wines, oyle and hony, yet plenty of hay that yeare.

And if newyeares night (being the first night of January) shalbe calme and cleare, without winde and raine, then doth the same promise a prosperous yeare following.

And if in the same night the winde happen to blowe out of the East, then doth the same signifie the death of cattell to ensue that yeare.

And if the same night the wind happen to blow out of the West, then a likelihode of the death of Kings and Princes to ensue that yeare.

And if in the same night the winde happen to blow out of the South, then doth the same signifie the death of many persons to ensue that yeare.

And if in the same night the winde happen to blow out of the North, then doth the same signifie the small yelde of all fruits of the earth that yeare.

How to foreknow the state of the yeare, by the onely rising of the dogge starre, out of the husbandry of Diophanes. Chap. 3.

AND about the knowledge of this there is to be considered and noted, in what signe the Moone shall then be, at first appearance of the dogge starre aboue the earth in our Realme of England, which generally be reckoned is about the seuenth day of July.

And now if the Moone runne then in the signe of Aries at the first appearance of the dog star, it doth after declare the death of cattell and much raine. So that small yelde of corne, yet plenty of oyle shall be that yeare.

And if the Moone run then in the signe Taurus at the first appearance of the dog star, then it doth signifie much raine, fogs, and mists, that shall harme much that yeare.

And if the Moone run then in the signe Gemini at the first appearance of the dog starre, it doth after promise plenty of corne and wine, and all other fruits of the earth, yet a diseased yeare, and to be doubted that a King shall then die, and that rebellion also shall be moued that yeare.

And if the Moone runne then in the signe Cancer at the first appearance of the dog star aboue the earth, it doeth after threaten drought, with great scarsity of corne to ensue in that yeare.

And if the Moone runne then in the signe Leo at the first sight of the dogge starre, it after promiseth plentie both of

wines

wines and oyle, and good cheape of corne and other victuals that yeare: and yet to be feared the commotions of the common people, and slaughter the same to ensue, with an earthquake and land floods to happen in that yeare.

And if the Mone runne then in the signe Virgo at the first appearance of the dog star, it after signifieth plenty of showers and the great store of fruits of the earth, and the cheapenesse also of cattell: and yet to be feared that women shall be delivered before their time in that yeare.

And if the Mone runne then in the signe Virgo at the first appearance of the dog starre, it after declareth the stirring up of a king, and a commotion of the common people: and yet the plenty of fruits of the trees, although there be a likelihood of the scarsity of corne and oyle in that yeare.

And if the Mone runne then in the signe Scorpio at the first appearance of the dog starre, it after declareth the commotion of Priestes, the destruction of Bees, and an infective aire to ensue that yeare.

And if the Mone runne then in the signe Sagitarius at the first sight of the dogge starre aboue the earth, it after signifieth a raine yeare, yet fruitfull, and the plenty of corne, and ioy among men: and yet is to be feared the death of cattell, and the multitude of owles in that yeare.

And if the Mone runne then in the signe Capricornus at the first appearance of the dogge starre aboue the earth, it after declareth the commotion of Souldiers, and great store of raine, and yet plenty of corne, wines, and oyle, and all other things good cheape in that yeare.

And if the Mone runne then in the signe Aquarius at the first appearance of the dogge starre aboue the earth, it after signifieth the death of some King or Prince, the scarsitie of corne, and the plenty of such flies with long hinder legs that burne corne by the touching of it: and yet little raine and the plague to ensue in that yeare.

And if the Mone runne then in the signe Pisces at the first appearance of the dog starre aboue the earth, it after declareth much raine, and the death of birds: and yet doeth it

promise a sufficient store, and laudable plentifulnesse, both of Wines, Oyle, and Corne, but many persons shall be diseased in that yeare.

Other profitable instructions, right necessary for husbandmen to know. Chap. 4.

And first, if the horne of the Ramme (neare his eare) be bored, the same doth tame his fiercenes. And if his right genitour be trussed vp before he goe to couer the Ewe, then doth he beget an Ewe lambe. And if the left be thus strait trussed vp, and the right hanging downe, then doth he beget a hee lambe.

And if in the time of the South winde blowing, the Ram doth then couer the Ewe, he doth after beget a shee lambe.

And if when the North wind bloweth, the Ram doth then couer the Ewe, doth after beget a hee lambe. And of what colour also the veines shalbe vnder the tongue of the Ewe, such shall the colour of the skin of the lambe be: for if she hath black veines vnder the tongue, then the lambe shalbe of black skin, and if white veines vnder the tongue, then shall she haue a white lambe: and if of diuers colours, then the lambe shall be of diuers colours on the skin. And that ancient Isaac writeth, that Rams in their yong yeares be of lesser moisture & clamminesse, then be the sucking lambs, and this is through their age and qualitie then ruling.

And therefore the flesh of yong weathers is better, and ingenders better blood then the sucking lambes.

And this is here spoken of such Rammes as be gelded, in that their moisture and hotnesse is then temperate.

And the Weathers ouer-olde are to be refused in eating, that they be then colde and drie without moisture, and they smally nourish, and hardly digest.

Also beefe and other flesh of beasts being olde, be euill to eate, through the coldnes and drines, and through the lack of the moisture and hotnesse. And when the old Rams in their time to couer the Ewe, be soner moued therto then the yong Rams, it doth then signifie a good and profitable season to ensue in that yeare, and a good season and prosperous also for sheepe.

shæpe. But if in the proper time to couer the Ewe, the yong Rams be sooner prouoked thereto then the olde Rams, then doth follow the great rot or murraine of shæpe in that yeare.

Also Ewes by drinking of water conceiue the sooner with lambe, and for this the shepheards giue them salt to eate, whereby in more drinking of water, they may so conceiue with yong, & they are also by that meanes preserued the healthfuller. And in the haruest also some shepheards giue them to eate gourds seasoned with salt, to increase their milke, for by that meanes doth the milk more plentifully issue forth of their teats, and the Ewes do sooner conceiue. Also in Summer is the colde Northerly water good for them, and in the Haruest the warme Southerly water good for them.

Also to let shæpe fæde in the end of the day, is greatly commended: and if they also stirre but little abroad, the same is thought very profitable, in that the much iourneying, and laboring of them hither and thither, doth cause them to become leane. Also the skilfull shepheards know which shæpe will well indure the sharpe winter, and which not, in that vpon some of the shæpes backs (as they affirme) ice may be found, and vpon other some none at all. So that by this may be learned, that such shæpe which be weake, a man can hardly pluck off the ice from their backes. And further learne, that those shæpe which haue long tailes, may hardlier abide the sharpe cold water, then those hauing broad tailes: and the shæpe also curled of haire (doe in like sort) hardlier indure the bitter winter: and besides these, the thunder greatly harmeth shæp, especially if any Ewe being with yong happeneth to be alone at that instant, for that she then being with lambe, doth of the fearful noise of the thunder, deliuer her lamb before the time: and for a speciall remedy to saue that vntimely casting of lambes at such times, the skilfull shepheards haue found out that the onely driuing of many Ewes together is a sure safegard to them to auoyd this occasion. Besides, if you will remoue the rot of shæp, that they die no more: then take the belly of a Ram, and seeth the same in wine and water together, which after mixe with water, & giue the same generally to al

the

the sheepe to drinke, for by that meanes shall they againe be recouered of their disease. And here learne, that the flesh of sheepe, and other foure foted beasts, which commonly feed in moist ground, is euill to feed vpon, for the hard digestion of the same. Also learne, that the good sheepe are knowen by their age, as being neither too old, nor yet as lambs, and by the forme also they are knowen, if so be you find them large of body.

And they besides haue much and soft Mooll, and both thicke and long haire, especially on the nape, and about the necke, and the like haire on the belly. And both the health and sicknesse of sheepe may be knowen, if so be any open their eies, and finde the veines within to be red and small, it doeth vndoubtedly declare them to be sound and good: but if those veines shall appeare white, or red and big, then those sheepe are diseased and weake. And if the sheepe goe lustily and boldly by the way, it is a sure token that they be sound: but sadly and hanging downe the head, then be they diseased. These hitherto of the yearely coniectures, and other rules, onely meete for husbandmen to vnderstand and know.

An

A most profitable rule for the preseruation of mans health, thorowout the twelue moneths of the yeare, after the minde of diuers learned men of the Vniuersitie of Padua.

Chap. v.

Ianuary.

AND first, in the moneth of January draw no blood out of any veine, vnlesse a great necessity constraineth thereto, that you cannot otherwise chuse. But if you bleede by veine, beware of taking any cold in this moneth, so nigh as you can, and walke not abroade in the night time: and vse to eate then the best confections, and to drinke often white wine in this moneth, for that flegme doth then increase. And to fast long in this moneth, is hurtfull to the body: but to eat salets well prepared with oyle and spices, is well commended. And wash not thy head in this moneth, but to bath your body, or to take a vomit, you may safely doe in this moneth.

Also take euery morning once (thorowout this moneth) for three houres before dinner, a little quantity of rosed hony, for that the same doth comfort the stomacke, and clense the body both of choler and flegme. And drinke also these spices either in wine or ale, as Graines, Ginger, Nutmegs, Cloues and such like, for those be greatly commended in this month.

February.

In the moneth of February, vse to eate confections tanded with hony, for that they purge the body. And to eate Ap-

pies in this moneth is commended: but to eate often fresh Bæfe, or other meates that bee moist, or to eate any potte herbes, except Parcely or Smallech, is thought hurtfull. And rather eat oftner sodden meat then roasted in this moneth, for that the same doth kæpe the body soluble. Also to bathe in this Moneth is not hurtfull, nor to take a potion or to blæde in that veine under the thumb, and you may safely take pils in this Moneth, to purge the heade, for that a man feeleth himselfe more grieued with a heauinesse in the head in this Moneth, then in any other Moneth.

And to eate Hony with bread in this Moneth is commended, for that the same doth purge the brest and bladder.

March.

In the Moneth of March vse to eate pleasant and wel spiced meats, but sharpe meates refraine in this Moneth, and to drinke pleasant and strong wine is now commended. And eate often Læke pottage: and to bath often in that Moneth, is greatly commended. But beware of taking any potion, to purge or blæde by veine in this Moneth. And vse to eate often of the herbe Peniroyall, for that the same doeth heate the stomacke, and causeth then the better digestion. And in your salets also eate of the herbe Betonie, for that the same doeth clære and helpe the sight, and much amendeth the head. Also Graines, Ginger, Nutmegs, Galingale, Pepper, and such like spices, be profitable to drinke in this Moneth.

Aprill.

In this Moneth of Aprill doth blod increase, wherfore to eate pleasant meats, and riuer-fish, and salets often, is now commended. And to blæde by veine in any part of the body, except the vein of the lungs, is now thought profitable, for by opening the veine is dangerous, but to open at the middle veine is greatly commended, and likewise bathing often in this Moneth. And to purge the stomacke with a potion, or otherwise, is very good; but eat no kind of rots in this moneth. And to eat al kind of flesh, except pigs, is thought good in this moneth:

moneth: and you may now enter into Physick for any griefe of the body, (but drinke moderately) and you may also safely bleede for the scabs in this Moneth: and vse to eate Betonie and Mints prepared in Hony, and drink first in the morning without eating of any thing, and to drinke also the herbe Crace in wine is now profitable: but beware of eating any kind of salt fish in this Moneth, for that the same doeth engender both the itch and the scab on the body.

Maie.

In the month of May, wash often thy face with faire running water: But vse not to eate of such meats as be hot of quality: and bleed in any part of the body where need shall be, but it is most profitable to bleede in the feete for that the blood then hath his course downe to the feet: and beware also of eating any stale fish, or tainted flesh that sore smelleth: and eate your meales now in due season, and drinke but little wine in this moneth. And to bathe in any condition in this moneth is not vnprofitable: and to drinke clarified whay simply, or drawne with cold herbes, is now very healthfull vnto hotte stomachs. And pure wine also mixed with goats milke, and with that to annoint both the head and brest, is greatly commended: and to drinke sharpe drinkes in this moneth, is thought good, and to take Physick if need requireth. But eate no head or foote of any beast in this moneth, because of the moisture of the herbes and grasse which the beasts doe eate in the same. And to drinke wormwood wine is thought very profitable in this moneth, and to eate Fenell roots tenderly sodden. And to take gentle Laxes to purge the blood and body is now thought good, and to sleepe after dinner. And also some thinke, that to bleed on the head veine, or liuer veine, is profitable in this moneth.

Iune.

In the Moneth of Iune, abstaine from all such meates as doe engender flegme, but drinke of the pleasantest Wine, and sometimes in the morning fasting a cuppe of white wine, for that the same doth now purge choler in man.

And to eat salets of Lettuce prepared with vineger, is thought profitable, for that they be good against the humours which do descend vnto the kidneis: and vse to eat such meats as be light of digestion, and arise alwaies (this moneth thorow) from the table somewhat hungry, and arise also timely in the morning, and exercise your body with some long walke. And any may safely bleed that needeth in this month: but beware of eating milke, vnlesse the same be well sodden, and likewise take heed both of the eating of cheese and apples in this moneth. And a man may bathe himselfe in this moneth, so that he tarry not long therein. And to wash the feet often in colde water, is likewise commended.

Iulie.

In the moneth of July, it is not good to eate strong meats, nor those which do greatly nourish, or pleasant spiced meats, for the hotnesse of the season, for that the Dog daies be entred in. And therefore beware of bleeding by veine, or of taking any medicine to purge the body: and yet may a man bleed a little by cupping in the bath. And in this month, and in the other month following, a man may drinke but little wine, for that the same doth drie the stomacke and liuer, and increaseth choler: and the smallest and weakest drinks are now to be vsed fasting against choler: and in this moneth refraine your selfe from the venerial act, as nigh as you can: and vse to eat euery morning fasting a litle Sage and herbe-Grace, with a bit of bread: and beware of eating any muddy fish in this moneth (taken with the net) lest through the eating of them you catch some sicknesse, and die therof: and vse to eat Verjuice in all your meats, for that the same doth cole and refresh the body, but refraine the eating of fruits in this moneth: and very healthfull it is vnto the body to annoint the necke and brest with the iuyce of herbe Grace, Isope, and Smalleche mixed with Hony, and enter into a bathe fasting, yet bathe but moderatly all the moneth thorow, for that otherwise to bathe is very dangerous in this moneth: and beware of either eating Beets, or Lettuce, in this moneth, for that they haue nowe a kinde of poyson in them,

which

which now be right perilous : and yet profitable it is vnto Husbandmen to eate both Garlike, Sage, and fatte Bacon.

August.

In the moneth of August doeth choler with melancholy encrease, so that now do happen agues, with colde and burning, and other grieuous sicknesses hardly cured. Wherefore a man must now refraine the venerial act, and order himselfe in a moderate condition, as sleeping but little in the day time all this moneth, and to beware of taking any colde, or to bleed by veine, or to vomite, or otherwise to take any medicine to purge the body: and refraine from eating any pottehearbes all this moneth thorow : and refraine from eating any Cabbages, for that they engender melancholy, and cause the ague in men : and vse to eate Sage in all your meate, for that the same is profitable vnto the body, and Mellons the like, yet lesser in quantitie at your meales : and drinke both good and pleasant wine, and eate both pullets and veale, for that such comfort the body: and vse to eate often Cinnamon in your meats. And an ointment thus prepared, doth helpe many diseases of the body: take Peniroyall, hearbe-Grace, Fenel, Smallech, the seeds of Isope, Bay-berries, and Alom, vnto which ad Oyle Olive, tempering all together with hony, and after annointing the body therewith: and to eat also Lettuce, and all other things that be cold of quality, is now commended.

September.

In the moneth of September eate all manner of meates you list, for that in the same moneth all things bee in their proper vertue. And for so much as the harvest is well entred, therefore it is now good to take a gentle purgation, like as is the flowre of Cassia new drawne, that gently purgeth the body, and comforteth nature : wherefore this likewise ought to bee done, to the end to preserue the body in health vnto the next spring, & also to vse cordiall powders in your broths, vnto the spring. Also in this moneth may simples be well applied in any sicknes, for that the rots, the fruits, and seeds, do

abound now, and be also thorow ripe. And what could not aptly bee ministred in the Moneth of May with simples, may in this Moneth be done with them. And to eate Pomegranates and Goates milke, is well commended in this Moneth, for that they both increase blood, and cause a good colour.

October.

In the Moneth of October doe your bodies wax drie and the braine moist, and greater bones, and therefore it behoueth to eate rosted meates often in this Moneth, and to drink pleasant wine. Also drinke newe wines, and eate pleasant meat often, as Goats milke fasting, for that the same doeth now purifie the blood and cleanse the lungs: and eat often apple-tarts, prepared with comfortable spices and Sugar, in that they comfort greatly the stomacke: but wash not the head in all this Moneth. And you may let blood in this Moneth, or giue a potion to purge, like as the necessitie of the sickneſſe or disease shall so require: and beware of eating too much of new fruits: but the eating of the Radish roote is yet profitable, and to eat mustard also with all meats is likewise commended: also all wilde fowles eaten now, bee thought good, and Cloues with Cinamon, are profitable in this Moneth.

Nouember.

In the moneth of Nouember is melancholy encreased, and blood decreased, and for this it is profitable to eate both egs and hony, and to vomite also sundry times, and salt powdered meats is now commended: and bath not in this moneth, or but little if néede so requireth, for that it is thought to bee the most perilous moneth of the yeare to bathe in: and besides, the blood is now restrained within the arteries of the body, which by sweating in the hot bath should so cause the stirring vp of humours, and a stilling from the head, with vncurable paines of the head, and darknes of sight, and paines otherwise of the eies. And in this moneth you may (if néede so require) either purge the body, or blæde by veine: also the eating now of Hony, Ginger, Pulse, and Goates milke, is

profitable

profitable to the body, for that they increase blood, and cause a good colour to man: and Cinamon and Ginger drunke often in this moneth is greatly commended, for that they giue health. And in this moneth goe not timely forth, because of the stinking mistes and fogges which then be that greatly harme the head, and therefore let the Sun be of some height before your going forth of the doores.

December.

In the moneth of December doth melancholy and flegme encreale, which be both heauie and cold: and therefore a man muſt now kæpe the body and head very well from cold, and to eate such things as be of hot quality: also to eate pottage made of Colewoorts and Cabages, and to eat rosted Onions prepared in salets, and either rosted apples or peares after meals, be greatly commended: and eat the flesh of weathers, Rammes, and Goats, also Capons, and all manner of land fowles, but no water fowles: and bleed but a little in this moneth, and that in the head veine, for that in no moneth of the yeare man hath lesse store of blood then in this: and goe not forth of your house in the night time, except you bee otherwise constrained, for that the moist aire of the night doeth much harme the body: and eat new Parcely rootes tenderly sodden, for that they much comfort the stomacke: and eate Rape rootes also rosted vnder the embers (all this moneth throw) for the health of the body. And eate not in this moneth neither of crowes nor swines flesh, for that they be now ouer moist, and also vnprofitable vnto the body: and drinke often wine in this month: and eat meats dressed with Hony, and Cinamon, Mace, Nutmegs, Ginger, Graines, Cloues, Galingale, and such like: and the same in drinke this moneth, doe cherish the blood, the heart, and all the body.

Of the falling sicke in any of the weeke daies, out of that ancient Physition Hippocrates.

Chapter 6.

AND now if any first falleth sicke on the sunday, & amendeth not of that sicknes at the fift day after, he doth die in the ninth day following: but if he recouer and come to better

health

healthy about the eight or ninth day after, then doth he recouer perfect healthy about the fiftenth day following.

And if any firſt falleth ſicke on the Sunday, then he ſhall recouer healthy at the nintch day following: but if that ſicknes continue to the twelfth day, the patient ſhall then die in the fourtenth day after.

And if any ſhall fall ſicke on the Tueſday, he ſhall then amend at the third day after: but if the ſicknes yet continueth, then death to be looked for without doubt, at the firt or eight day after.

And if any firſt falleth ſicke on the Wedneſday, and that at the ſeuenth day falleth to good reſt, and ſlæpeth, hee ſhall amend of that ſicknes: but if the ſicknes indureth to the twelfth day, and increaſing vnto the firt or ſeuenth day, he dieth then without doubt.

And if any firſt falleth ſick on the Turſday, then he amendeth at the ninth day following: but if the ſicknes longer continue, yet amendment vnto healthy at the fiftenth day following.

And if any beginneth to fall ſicke on the Friday, he ſhal after amend at the ſeuenth or eight day following: but if that ſickneſſe longer indureth, then death to bee feared at the fiftenth day after. And if that ſicknes ſhall ſomewhat abate at the eight or ninth day after, then the patient ſhall recouer to healthy at the firtenth day following.

And if any falleth ſicke on the Saturday, and that the ſame ſickneſſe doth continue to the firt day, then the perſon dieth at the eight day following: but if that perſon commeth vnto healthy at the ſeuenth day after, and ſlæpeth quietly that night without paine of the ſickneſſe, hee ſhall after recouer perfect healthy at the fourtenth day following. And further note, that all men in healthy haue their vrine or water in the morning white, before dinner againe redde, after dinner clearer and whiter, and at the euening before ſupper hot.

Of

Of thoſe manifeſt ſignes which declare raine to follow. Cap. 7.

FIrſt a redneſſe of the aire about the Sun being new riſen, doth declare a token of raine to enſue.

And a like rednes of the aire about the Sun at the euening doth foreſhew faire weather the next day following. And when about the Sun (after he is riſen, or beginneth to ſet) ſhall appeare blacke or græne clouds, or blacke cloudes mixed with græneneſſe, and a circle at that time likewiſe appearing about the Sun, or elſe ſhal aſcend with blacke or græne cloudes, or appearing nére vnto a grænnes, or elſe that the Sun ſhall haue large clouds both aboue & beneath him, doth declare raine and foule weather to enſue, either the ſame day or night following. And the like notes in the riſing of the Sun, declare raine the ſame day, and the like at the euening, then raine to enſue that night following.

And the Sun appearing hollow or ſpottie, or elſe ariſing or ſetting vnder a cloud, doth declare raine to follow.

And when the Sun ariſeth or ſetteth bigger then cuſtomably it is ſéene, doth declare raine to follow.

And the Sun appearing leſſer in the ariſing then cuſtomably, or at the ſetting ſheweth it ſelfe diuided into a blackiſh cloud, and that nére to the earth, doth declare raine to follow ſhortly after.

And when a blacke, long, and thicke cloud ſhall appeare aboue the Sunne, at the ſetting in the weſt, it doth declare raine to enſue.

And a miſt about the Sun, when the ſame doth long tarie, or not quickly ſpent, doth declare raine to follow, in that the ſame is cauſed through the dewie and raynie vapours, caried betwéene the Sunne and our ſight.

And when the Sun after his riſing, ſheweth thorow a thicke cloud broken open, and ſhoting out beames darkly, or elſe the Sun appearing diuided, doth declare raine to follow.

And the Sun appearing the greater parte of the day thorow thin clouds, or a miſtie aire the moſt part of the day,

so that the Sunne sheweth thorow it like to a round hole doth declare raine to follow. And when the Sun after the arising or the setting, especially in the spring and harueſt, giueth forth mightie heate in a miſtie aire, doth either declare wind or raine to enſue.

And when a thicke and blacke cloud appeareth aboue the Sun in the riſing, and that by and by after the Sun is hid vnder that cloude, then doth it declare raine to enſue. But if the Sun be not hid of that cloude, then doth follow faire weather.

And the ouer-timely riſing and appearing of the Sun aboue the earth, doth declare raine to enſue.

And when in the third night after the chang of the moone the hornes appeare blunter and bigger then cuſtomably, it doth declare raine to follow in that month.

And the Moone hauing blacke ſpots in the toppes of her hornes, doth then ſignifie ſhowers in her firſt weekes, and if ſuch ſpots at the full of the Moone appeare in the middle, then doth the ſame declare faire weather to enſue.

And if the third night after the Moone change, the ſouth wind bloweth, then in the fourth day following it ſhall either raine more or leſſe.

And if the Moone be not ſeene before the fourth night, and that the ſouth wind then bloweth, it doth declare raine to follow moſt parte of that month. And the Moone in her firſt appearing, ſhewing blacker of body then cuſtomably and hauing blacker hornes, doth declare foule and raynie weather before the end of that month.

And the Moones beames at the blowing then of the ſouth wind, ſhewing darker, bigger and ſhorter downward toward the earth, doth declare raine to follow.

And this is a great token of raine to follow, when as the Sun in the day time, and the Moone in the night, doe appeare pale or blackiſh of colour.

And when the night is faire and cleare, and the Element appearing fuller of Starres then accuſtomably, doth then declare raine to follow ſhortly after.

And

And another note of raine to ensue, is when fewer starrs appeare in the night then customably, for that our sight then is hindred through the vapoures running in the aire.

And the appearance of blacke cloudes in the aire, and ascending of a mist or fogge vpward, in that the vapours then be thicked together, doe declare raine to ensue.

And when the clouds in the aire be in a manner of all one colour round about, do then declare raine shortly after.

And cloudes appearing in the ayre like to flockes of wool, doe sometime signifie raine with colde, but no great raine, for that those flockes appearing, do declare the grosseneſſe of the vapours.

And white clouds appearing in the Sommer time, doe declare haile to ensue: but white clouds appearing in the aire in the winter time, doe declare snow to follow.

And when a mist or thinne Cloud doth happen in a drie season, and that the same ascendeth vpward, and is turned into a thicke cloude, doth then declare raine to ensue, but the same falling downward whiles the raine indureth, or shortlie vpon the raine, doth then declare faire weather to ensue.

And if many white clouds appeare neere the earth in the euening, for two or three daies together in the winter time, they doe then declare both cold and snow to ensue.

And the clouds in the winter time appearing whiter then customable, doe declare Snowe to follow, especially when after such appearance, the aire is then felt somewhat warme, through the heat which is then sent out of the cloud.

And the often changing of the wind, which is especially knowne by the course of the clouds, doth declare raine to follow, in that the cloudes be driuen with the winds, and the vapours also gathered together, which through the thicking together, doth cause the raine to fall.

And the blowing of the South-winds doth declare vndoubtedly raine to follow, in that those winds be hot and moist, and thereof doe so easily resolue the vapours from the

bodies aboue, which causeth the raine to fall. Also a gentle south wind doth euermore send downe raine, when as the same beginneth to cease and wax still.

And the dewe not falne in the accustomed season, and beginning then to fall, is a sure token of raine to ensue, in that the dewe falleth not in the accustomed season, which perfectly declareth that the vapours which be in the matter of dew be then caried vp with others, and so thickned together into a rainie cloude.

And when the Rain-bow appeareth in the morning, before the middle of the day in the west, and the like at afternoone toward the euening in the East, doth vndoubtedly declare long raine to follow.

And the Rain-bow appearing in a faire day, doth declare raine to follow, but appearing after foule weather, doth declare faire weather to ensue.

And the Rain-bow appearing in the south, declareth much raine to follow, and appearing in the west, declareth thunder and a small raine to follow, and appearing about the euening in the east, doth promise faire weather.

And the greener the Raine-bow shall appeare, so much the longer raine doth follow. But the redder the Rain-bow doth appeare, euen so much the bigger also doth the wind ensue.

And if the same appeareth in faire weather, then doth it declare both raine and wind to ensue.

And the like a Rain-bow appearing about the Moone or about the light of a candle, declareth raine to follow.

And two Rain-bowes appearing at one time, as the one hanging downward from the south, & the other Rain-bow from the North, doe declare raine to follow.

And when the clouds and winds driue one way, or into one quarter together, declareth rain to folow without dout.

And now these few Celestiall tokens here rehearsed, are both manifest & true, which any person of small knowledge may lightly conceiue and truely prognosticate vpon.

And further, the earthly signes be these: as first when that vapours

vapours breath out of the earth, as the like is manifestly felt by entring into any deepe vault or cellour vnder the earth, being especially within a citie or great towne, and that the privy giueth forth a mightie stinke, that then raine doeth shortly after follow.

And another note also of the earth is, when timely in the morning before day light a mist ariseth, which sheweth low on the earth, and that the Mone then shining, causeth the mist to shew in forme of a sea, and that after the Sun is risen, the same maketh the aire very darke, and blacke clouds also appearing in the aire, which together declareth a mighty raine to follow, and long enduring.

And when the dust is more raised vp then customably, and that trées also much more moued in the groues and woods, it doth declare raine without doubt, in that there is then a mighty breaking forth, both of many and grosse vapours.

And when riuers and wels be shallower of water then customably, it then declareth raine to follow, in that the same matter and water falleth from the clouds, and of this when those impressions be diminished, then be those moistures drawen vp, which so ingender the raine.

And the vaines of hands, and the clefts and roughnesse of the lips do declare raine to folow, in that the attractiue vertue of the moisture is then both mighty & strong, which so drieth the body, and maketh the lips rough. And of this the earthly bodies be altered according to the altering of the celestiall bodies aboue.

And when small birds in the beginning of winter, do gather & flie many in a company together, seeking their meat in such companies in the fielde, it after declareth colde and frosts to ensue, and stormy weather.

And al birds when they make a greater noise in the flying then customably, and by trimming their feathers with their bils, doth declare raine to follow.

And all riuer fowles playing and beating themselues in the water, & washing themselues in that water, doe declare raine to ensue. And the like doe the riuer fowles by leauing

the water, and couering the Pedowe, signifie raine to follow.

And the Geese making a loud noise together, and flying, doe signifie a tempest to ensue.

And the Bées seeking their hony neerer home than customably, doe declare a tempest, and rainie weather to ensue.

And when the sheepe toward the euening, at their driuing vnto fold, do feed more earnestly in their going, and take no care of the shepherds calling and crying vnto them, and that scarcely with strokes to be driuen forward, do after signifie raine to follow.

And the bird named the Pie, chattering more then customably, doeth after declare raine to ensue. And the swine drawing forth, tearing and hiding handfuls of hay, doe declare raine to follow.

And the Frogs making a greater noise then customably, do declare raine to ensue: and if the dew appeare not in the morning, so that the same be not hindred through the wind, after signifieth raine or frost to ensue, and this according vnto the time of the yeare.

And the Oxen licking the hoofes of the hinder feet, and against the haire, and lying all alike on the right side, do declare raine to follow.

And beginning to raine, if the Oxen feede greedilier, doe then declare the longer continuance of raine. And the Oxe beating with the fore foot, doth either declare raine or tempest to follow.

And the doues comming later vnto the doue-house then customably, doth declare raine to follow. And the sound of bels or clockes heard further off then customably, doth declare raine to follow, except the same be caused of wind.

Of those manifest signes which declare faire and drie weather to follow. Chap. 8.

And first, when either the Sun riseth, or setteth cleare, so that he be not couered of any cloudes, doth then signifie faire weather that day following: & if in the Suns rising, any

any circle appeareth about him of diuers colours, or that declineth vnto a fiery rednes, or that the Sun beames passing thorow the clouds, shalbe red and long (so that the beames seeme like shots) and red scattered without the circle, doth then promise mightie winds to follow.

And the Sun setting red, declareth raine to follow, and if after the Suns setting in the West, red fiery clouds shall appeare, it declareth assuredly wind to follow.

And if the Sun shew red, or vnto an Orenge colour before his setting, especially for a great season before his setting, or in a maner thorowout the whole day, and that in the west, he appeare of a great bignes, it doeth vndoubtedlie signifie wind to follow.

And the Sunne rising hot, and not twinckling, declareth winde to follow: & if the Sun in the rising appeare hollow, declareth either wind or raine to follow: and if the Sun be felt hot many daies together, doeth after signifie drought and windes long continuing.

And if the Sun in the winter time toward his setting shal shew clearer and redder then customably, and that the north wind, or some other cold wind shall then blow, it doth signifie frost that night following.

And this declareth clearing of the weather in the time of raine, when as a brightnesse and cleering appeareth in the North-part, and that in the South-part appeareth swelled clouds heaped together.

And when after the Sun setting, the element appeareth blew, and few starres appeare, and that the dew be small, it doth declare faire weather the day following.

And if in the morning a mist appeare, which after the Sunne is risen, falleth down-ward, and riseth not vpward any more to be seene of any, it declareth a faire day following.

And when many white clouds appeare, especially in the West (neere vnto the earth) and in the euening, and this for two or three daies together in the winter time, it declareth both cold and snow to ensue.

And

And a troubling of the aire vnto raine, & that the clouds be then whiter then cuſtomably, declareth ſnow to enſue, eſpecially when after ſuch an appearance of the clouds, the aire be felt ſomewhat hot, through the heat which is then ſent forth out of the clouds.

And when the clouds driue one way, and the wind another, and right againſt the going of the clouds, doth declare faire weather to follow. And the reaſon of this is, for that the wind bloweth contrary vnto the going of the clouds, which driueth them in ſuch ſort that they cannot raine downe.

And the ſtars ſéene to run or ſhot, declare wind to ariſe out of that quarter, and if they ſhot on euery ſide, then they declare wind to follow out of all the quarters.

And if the ſtarres in the winter time appeare brighter then cuſtomably, declareth a great colde to enſue. And the ſtarres twinckling in the winter, doth declare a great colde and big froſt to follow.

And if the ſtars be ſéene greater, both in light and bignes then cuſtomably, doth then declare wind to follow.

And if the Bats do flie about timelier in the euening, and more of them then cuſtomably, doth then declare faire and hot weather the next day following.

And if the Moone after the third day of her change, appeareth in the Weſt, with cleare and faire hornes, and hath no miſt about her, declareth faire weather to followe all that quarter.

And if the Moone appeare ſmal and red, and that alſo the ſame part of the moone, which then hath no light of the ſun, appeareth cleare, and with a certaine driuing (as it ſeemeth vnto the eie) doth declare wind to follow out of that quarter from which the colours come, and about the Moone depart.

And if there appeare one cleare circle about the Moone, which ſone vaniſheth away, doth then declare raine to follow.

And where the Rain-bow appeareth but of two colours, as redde and yellow, and of no other colours, declareth faire

weather

weather to follow. And lightning seene in the euening, without thunder and clouds, and that often together, and neere the earth, declareth a faire day following.

And clouds seene like vnto fleeces of woll, scattered in the aire, and the sunne be then of a good height, declareth faire weather to ensue.

And the Northwind strongly blowing, although it causeth many clouds, doth neuertheles cause faire weather to ensue for the more part.

And the noise of woods, and much mouing of the leaues, doth declare winde and a tempest to ensue.

And the Kites playing & wauering about in the aire, and that the one followeth the other in their flying, declare a hot and faire day to follow.

And if little flies, somewhat before the Sunnes setting, do gather round on a heape before the Sunne, and play vp and downe, declare a faire and hot season the next day following.

And if a white smoke be risen before the rising of the Sun, and after the Sun setting, vpon the waters, marishes, and medowes, it doth signifie hot and faire weather the next day following: and if the same appeareth in the morning, then faire weather that day: and if at night, then faire weather the next day following.

And the Hedgehog, where he lieth maketh two holes, the one opening toward the north, & the other toward the south, and which of them he stoppeth, from the same part the winde ariseth: & if both at once, then great store of winde to follow.

And the Crow timely calling in the morning, declareth faire weather to follow: but crowing softly in the euening, declareth a tempest to ensue.

And the Crowe calling hastily twice or thrice together, declareth a tempest to follow.

And the dogge wallowing on the earth, declareth a great winde to follow: and lying on his right side, doth signifie a tempest to ensue.

And Oxen also lying on the right side, declare a tempest to ensue: but the Oxe lying on the left side, declareth faire wea-

ther to follow. And the Rauen standing gaping against the Sunne, declareth a hot weather to ensue.

And the Rams skipping oftner then customably, if they but together with their heads, declare a tempest to follow.

And many long webs (which some call the spittle of the Sunne) driuing in the aire, declare winde or tempest to follow.

And the Ramme not changing his voice in faire weather, declareth the longer continuance of the same, as some ancient men write.

And a darknes of the aire after raine, declareth faire weather to ensue (as most authors write.)

And when many shotes of fire (drawing the taile after them) appeare in the aire, like vnto the shoting of the starres, which by fiery vapors, running & shining like vnto the light of the starres, drawing after them a taile, doth declare wind to follow.

And if such vapours shote out of many quarters of the aire, they declare sundry winds to arise, and both thunder and lightning out of those parts.

And the drineſſe of things by a suddain manor in the winter time, and no rainie weather, like as of paper, the Marble stone, and such like, declare frost and cold weather to ensue.

And when Cranes flie in straight order, and not bending or turning again, it declareth faire weather to ensue, for that they flie not in such order before they see the weather clere.

And the clouds also in the clere aire caried vpward, out of what quarter of the Element the same be, doeth signifie the wind to arise out of that quarter.

And if the clouds heaped together, by drawing nere the Sunne be scattered, and this caused from the north, declareth wind to ensue.

And snow falling in the beginning of frost, if the same fall very small, declareth the mightier colde to followe: but if the snow fall bigge, then a suddaine thawe of the frost to ensue.

And

And the haile falling in the ſpring and harueſt, declareth a faire ſeaſon, and ſomewhat warme the ſame day: and this according to the time of the yeare.

And if any dreameth to ſee birds, it declareth wind to follow the next day, as hath béene experienced.

And windes in the winter blow about the morning, but in the Summer about the euening, and in the winter out of the Eaſt, and alſo in the Summer out of the Weſt. And if wind continue long North, and the harueſt windie, declare a ſtill winter: but if the harueſt be ſtill, then a windie winter.

The Booke of the Art or craft of Planting and Graffing.

To graffe fruite that ſhall haue no core.

TAke a graffe and bow both ends combing, and cut both ends graff-wiſe, and ſo faſten them into the ſtocke. And if it grow ſo with the tree, cut away the great end, and let the ſmaller end grow, and this fruit ſhall haue no core.

To make Apples red.

If you will make Apples red, take a graffe of an Apple tree, and graffe it in a ſtocke of Elme or Eldar, and it ſhall beare red Apples. Alſo you may boze a hole in an apple-tree to the pith, and temper it with water of what colour ye will, and then put it in the hole, and ſtop it with a pin, & the apple ſhalbe of the ſame colour that you put in the tree.

It is to be noted, that euery tree that is planted vpon S. Lamberts day in the earth, ſhall not periſh, but proue and come to profite.

To make the Pear-tree beare much fruit.

If you will haue a Pear-tree full of fruit, or elſe aſmuch as it hath bin wont to beare, temper Scamony with water, and put it into a hole that is pierced to the pith of the tree, and ſtop the hole with a pin of that ſame tree, or of another, and it ſhal beare as it was wont, and much more plentifull.

And if thou wilt haue them to smel like spices, or as musk, or balme, or other spices: make an hole in like sort in the tree, and stop it againe, and the fruit shall smel and sauor after the spices.

To reuiue an old tree that is decayed.

If an old tree begin to wax drie, doe in this wise quicken him againe, so that the eares that are about the rotes be done away, and cleaue two or three of the greatest rotes with an axe, and put a wedge into the cleauing, and couer the rote againe with the same earth.

Note also.

Pierce the tree thorow with a piercer crosse twice, or with a wimble, and the strength of the tree shal begin to wax yong.

How to make a soure fruit tree bring forth sweete fruite.

If you will haue a fruite tree that is soure, to bee made sweete fruit, delue the tree round about, & dung the rots with pigges dung, and so shall the fruit be made sweete: also make an hole in the soure tree with a piercer to the pith, & into the hole put water tempered with hony, and stop the hole againe with a pinne of the same tree.

The ordering of an Almond-tree, Wal-nut-tree, Cherry-tree, and Peach-tree.

Put the kernels of which of these yee will in water foure daies, and then put many kernels together into the earth, or seuerally: and when they spring and be growen out, and haue stood so a whole yeare, then take them out of the ground, and set them then where you will. And it is to be noted, that of euerie tree the branches must be cut in setting time, saue the Peach-tree, which must haue his drie branches cut onely.

How to nourish the Peach-tree, if it begin to wither.

If the Peach-tree begin to wither, let him be well moistened at the rote with dregs of wine, and the same moistning shall keepe him from shedding of his fruite: and some say, that if the rotes bee moystened with water of the decoction of beanes, it shall quicken the tree greatly: and if hee cast his fruite ere they bee ripe, make holes with a wimble in the rotes,

rotes, & make pins of willow, and smite them fast in, and the fruite shall abide on fast enough.

How to water plants when they waxe drie.

It shall be good to water them when the time is drie in the first yeare: then when they haue put forth new cyons, leaue no more growing but the cyon which is the principall & fairest, vpon euery stocke one, all the other cut off hard by the stocke: & euer as they doe grow small twigs about the stocke, ye shall (in the moneth of March and Aprill) cut them all off hard by the stocke. And if you then stick by euery plant a prettie wand, and so binde them with willow barke, briers, or osiers, it shall profite them much in their growth. Then after fiue or six yeares growth, when they be so big as your finger, or thereabouts, ye may then remoue any of them, whereas you will haue them grow and remaine.

The ordering of the Apple-tree.

If an Apple-tree begin to rotte, or any of the apples begin to ware ruttie, then the barke of him is sicke: then cut it with a knife, let it be opened, and when the humor thereof is somewhat flowen ouer, see that you dung him well, and stop diligently his wound with clay.

The ordering of the Quince-tree.

The Quince-tree all the time that he is able to be translated, he would be remoued euery fourth yere, and that shall make him beare great plenty of fruit afterward.

The ordering of the Cherry-tree.

The Cherry-tree loueth cold aire and moist ground, but some Cherry-trees like well in hilly places. The best setting of Cherry-trees is in the month of November, and if neede be in the latter end of January. And if the Cherry tree rot, in any wise make a hole with a piercer vnder the rote, that the water that causeth the rotting may haue issue out. It is supposed that this medicine is good for all manner of trees that begin to rot. Also it is good for all manner of trees, when a bough is cut away, that the place that is cut be couered with clay, or some other defensible plaster, for the defence of the raine, that it make not the tree to rot.

At what time Prunes ought to be planted.

The planting of Prunes in colde and moiſtie places, is beſt in February and March, and the ſtones muſt be ſet a hand breadth in the earth, & when they haue ſtood ſo a whole yeare, take vp the ſprings of them, and ſet them deeper in the ground, and the ſtones muſt lie in water three daies ere they be ſet.

How the Medler ſhould be planted.

The Medler will beare well if he be planted, but graffe him in a white thorne called an Haw-thorne, and they will beare more plenteouſly.

The ſowing of Roſes in a garden.

If you will haue any Roſes in your garden, you muſt take the hard pepins of the ſame Roſes that be full ripe, and ſowe them in the earth in Februarie or in March, and when they ſpring, temper them with water, & after the ſpace of a yeare, you muſt tranſlate them, and depart them farther from other in what other place you will.

How to plant white Grapes.

If you will that a vine beare on one ſide white Grapes, and on the other ſide red, prouide that a white Vine and a red be ſet neere together. And when they be rooted meaſurably both like much, of either pare away halfe endlong vpon the pith, and twine them together, and binde them ſo, that either ſap meete without diſioining, and wrap it vp together with a ſupple linnen cloth, and euery third day moiſt it with water till it grow. And after that they be growne together, thou muſt cut away the one roote, and the other may beare it: and that Vine ſhall beare both red Grapes and white, notwithſtanding the one roote be done away: and ſo thou maiſt doe with two Pear-trees, or two Apple-tree branches.

How to ſet Vine plants two and two together.

You ought to plant and ſet your Vines two and two together, the one to haue a part of the olde tree, and the other may be all of the laſt cyon: but when yee plant with him a part of the old tree, he ſhall commonly take roote ſooner then the

the new eyon. You must weede them euery moneth, and let not the earth be too close about their rootes at the first, but now and then lose it with a spade as ye shal see a raine past, for then they shall enlarge, and put forth better.

To make Grapes grow on a Plum-tree, or Cherry-tree.

And if you will haue Grapes grow on a Plum-tree, or a Cherry-tree, set a Vine vnder one of those two trées, which you will: and when the Vine beginneth to grow, bore the other tree thorow with a piercer, according to the greatnes of the Vine: then draw the vine thorow the tree, and pare away the vpper end of the same Vine, as farre as it shalbe in the hole, and so suffer it to grow: and when both be ioyned together, cut away the roote ende of the Vine by the tree, and couer that place wel with good earth of that cutting and drawing of the Vine thorow the hole, and the cutting away of the roote of the Vine, and that must be done in March: and some men will say it must be done ere the knots beginne to burgen, that for the strait drawing in, the burgens bee not hurt. And thus maist thou doe with diuers trées, and diuers fruites, and make one tree to beare diuers fruites of sundrie colours. Also ye must see that at the vine be good earth, and spred it selfe of many scourges, it is good to cut that off with a knife, and if it lacke yet ouermuch, delue the stocke about, and fill the pit full of grauell of a flood, medled with ashes. And some men say, doe into the pit a good quantitie of small stones, and that is good therefore.

The best times to Plant and Graffe in.

It is to be noted, that when the Moone is in Taurus, it is a good time to plant trées of Graines and Pepins: and when she is in Cancer, Leo, or Libra, it is good working of trées that be new sprung: and when the Moone is in Virgo, it is good time to sowe all manner of things. And from the middest of September, vnto the middest of December, is open time of planting: and right so from the middest of Januarie, to the middest of March, but yet in these times it is good to those when the Moone is 5, 6, 7, 8, or 10. daies

before

before the full. And after the full Mone, when she is 20, 22, 23, 24, or 25. daies old, for this quarter of the Mone is most temperate.

Note also.

Euery planting is to be disposed so, that the Sun beames may come to the rote, or to the earth, from the houre of three vnto none, and be planted in the best manner. And the trees that be bearing and of great height, that part that stood toward the North, must be set against the North wind, and the Northwest winde: for the high North wind, and the Northwest winde, by kinde doeth kill and drie too much the trees that be new set for their vnmeasurable greatnes: the earth also must be ordeined so, that it be neither too fat nor grauelly, but proportionably.

How to set all manner of pepins, kernels, and graines in the earth.

All maner of pepins, kernels, and graines, must be set in the earth, in depnes of foure or fiue fingers broad, that each be from other halfe a foote: alwaies keeping this special rule, that the end or graine of the pepin that stands next the roote be Northeast in the setting, and that other end vpward toward heauen. And that you moist them twice or thrice in the day, not rotting, but dewing or sprinkling. This is a priuity among cunning men, that in the spring is most conueniable time for sedes, graines, and pepins: and Autumn for springs and plants.

Of the manner and changing of the fruit of the Pepin-tree.

Whensoeuer you doe replant, or change your pepin-trees from place to place, in so remouing often the stocke, the fruite thereof shall also change, but the fruite which doeth come of grafting, doth alwaies keepe the forme and nature of the tree whereof he is taken: for as often I haue said, so often as the pepin-trees be remoued to a better ground, the fruite thereof shall be so much amended.

How

How you may make an Orchard in few yeares.

Some doe take yong straight slips, which doe grow from the rootes, or of the sides of the Apple trees, about Michaelmas, and do so plant and set them with oates in good ground, whereas they shall not be removed, and so graffe being well rooted thereon. Other some do take and set them in the spring time after Christmas in likewise, and do graffe theron when they be well rooted: and both waies doe spring well. And this manner of way is counted to haue an Orchard the soonest. But these trées will not endure past twentie or thirtie yeares.

How you ought to set the Pine-tree.

For to set the Pine-trée, ye must set or plant them of nuts in March, or about the shote of the sap, not lightly after: ye must also set them where they may not be removed after, in holes well digged and well dunged, not to be trans-planted or removed againe: for very hardly they will shew forth cyons being removed, specially if ye hurt the master rot therof.

To set Damsons or Plum-trees.

In setting Damsons or Plum-trées, which fruit ye would haue like to the trées they come of: if the said trees bee not graft before, ye shall take onely the cyons that grow from the rot of the old stocke, which groweth with small twigs, and plant or set them, and their fruit shall be like vnto the trees they were taken of.

How to remoue a Setling.

When you will take a Setling that springeth out of another trée rot, make and delue thereabout after the quantitie thereof, and so déepe till you come to the great roote that the spring groweth out of, and thou maist cut it off, and holding the edge of the knife toward the trée ground: and cut it so with slope draught, and leaue as much of the earth about the roote, and stocke of the setting as you may, and set it in a good

ground ordained therefore, and in a conuenient time, as it is before said, & if any spring so groweth out of any tree, chuse that which groweth right out, that is not ouer-long, but euen, without any smal branches, holding the knife in cutting alway toward the tree.

How to remoue a great tree.

And if you will remoone a tree that is great or bearing fruit, chuse the full Moone, from the middest of October to the middest of December, hauing vp the rotes as whole as you may, with the same manner and order as ye doe with setting of small trées: and in the setting, it forceth not though the Moone be not euen in the full, so she be in the second or third quarter. The gouerning of these plants, is double of bearing of fruite.

How to keepe late set plants.

Also if you will kæpe late set plants, kæpe them from euening raines, and from winds, namely, in Haruest, for it is no great difficultie in the Spring. Against the comming of winter, set or sticke about the setting many boughes, that the Northern winde, or greatnesse of other winds destroy it not: also put dunge mingled with straw about the stocke toward the rote, of a good thickues, that frost and snow congeale not on the rote: and make a dæpe valley about the roote, the space of fiue or seuen fote, that the water abide not and fræse about the rote in haruest, that is, betwæn summer and winter, that when winter commeth, it may be filled with dung, and so let it stand all the winter: and in the spring, put vnder the dung new earth, and cut away all the vnprofitable branches, and make it cleane about the stocke and the rotes, from wormes, scurfes, and mosses, and from euill wædes going about the branches: all the close of thine Orchard wholly beset about with other high trées that beare no fruit, that the floures might be kept safe from windes. And beware that no fruite bee gathered of any tree before the time, for that is a right great, and priuie harming to the tree.

How

How you may keepe Cherries good a yeare.

If you would kæp Cherries good a yere, ye shal cut off the stalkes, and then lay them in a well leaded pot, and fill the said pot with Cherries: then put vnto them of good thin honnie, and fill the pot also therwith. Which done, stoppe it with clay that no aire enter in, then set it in some faire cellar, and put sand vnder and all about it, and couer the pot withal, and so let it stand or remaine: thus ye may kæpe them a yere, as fresh as though they came from the trée. And after this sort ye may kæpe peares or other fruit.

How you may set Chesnuts.

The Chesnut trée men do vse to plant like vnto the figge trée. They may be both planted and grafted well, they ware wel in fresh and fat earth, for in sand they like not. If ye will set the kernels, ye shall lay them in water vntil they do sink, and those that doe sinke to the bottome of the water be best to set, which ye shal set in the moneths of Nouember and December, foure fingers dæpe, and a foote one from another: for when they be in those two moneths set or planted, they will endure long, and beare also good fruit. Yet some there be that plant or set them first in dung, like beanes, which wilbe swæter then the other sort, but those which be set in the two moneths aforesaid shall first beare their fruit: men may proue which is best, experience doth teach. This is another way to proue and know which Chesnuts be best to plant or set, that is, yee shall take a quantitie of Nuts, then lay them in sand the space of thirty daies, then take and wash them in water faire and cleane, and throw them into water again, and those that doe sinke to the bottome, are good to plant or set, and the other that swim are naught: thus may ye do with all other kernels or nuts.

The order how to plant or set trees at large.

This ought to be considered of all graffers & planters, that ye must giue a competent space from one trée vnto another,

when as yee make the holes to set them in, not so high nor that one tree touch another. For a good tree planted or sette well at large, profiteth oftentimes more of fruit, then three or foure trees set too nigh together. The most greatest and largest trées commonly are Wal-nuts and Chest-nuts. If ye plant them seuerally in ranke, as they doe commonly growe vpon high waies, beside hedges in fields, they must be sette fiue and thirtie foote asunder one from another, or thereabouts: but if ye will plant many rankes in one place together, ye must set them the space of xlv. foote one from another, or thereabouts: and so farre ye must set your rankes one from another. For the Pear-trées and Apple-trées, and other sorts of trees, which may be set of this largenesse one from the other: if ye doe plant onely in rankes by hedges, in the fields, or otherwise, it shalbe sufficient of xx. foot one from another: but if you will set two rankes vpon the sides of your allies in gardens, which be of x. or xii. foote broad, it shall then bee best to giue them more space the one from the other in each ranke, as about fiue and twentie foote: also ye must not set your trees right one against the other, but entermedling or betweene euery space, as they may best growe at large, that if neede be, ye may plant of other small trées betweene, but see that ye set them not too thicke. If you list to sette or plant all your trees of one bignes, as of yong trees like rods, being Pear trées or Apple-trées, they must be set a good space one from another, as of xxv. or xxx. foote in square, as to say, from one ranke to another. For to plant or set smaller trees, as Plum-trées or Apple-trées of the like bignes, it shall be sufficient for them xiiii. or xv. foote space in quarters. But if you will plant or set two rankes in your allies in gardens, you must deuise for to proportion it after the largenesse of your said allies. For to plant or set eager or sower Cherry-trees, this space shall be sufficient enough the one from the other, that is, of x. or xii. foote: and therefore if you make great or large allies in your garden, as of x. foote wide, or thereabouts, they shall come well to passe, and shall be sufficient to plant your trees of nine or ten foote space: and for the other

lesser

lesser sorts of trées, as of Quince-trees, Nut-trees, and such like, they be not commonly planted, but in one ranke together.

The best way to clense and proine, or dresse the rootes of trees.

And for the better clensing and proining trees beneath, doe thus: ye shall take away all the weeds and grasse about the roots, then shal ye dig them so round about, as you would séeme to plucke them vp, and shal make them halfe bare, then shall ye enlarge the earth about the rootes, and where as ye shall see them grow faire and long, place or couch them in the said hole and earth againe: then shal ye put the cut end of the tree, where he is graft, somewhat more lower then his roots were, whereby his cyons so graft, shall spring so much the better.

The manner of Graffing.

The great stocke must be chosen in good ground, and it must be smooth and euen, and cutte it without the earth the length of a foote or more, if it be as great as the thumb, if it be greater, looke that the cutting be euen ouerthwart the stocke and aside, and it must be clouen aboue in the midst of the pith the length of two fingers breath, & in the clift set the graffe, which must be chosen of the best tree. The stocke is of the chiefe graffe that standeth right vpward, that hath a knot of the former yeare. And an inch beneath the said knot, cut thy graffe, and thwite it on both sides, euen in a manner of a wedge, as far as it shall goe into the clift of the stocke, it must be so euen thwiten, that the aire may not come betweene the clift and the graft, and then close it with good tempered earth about the graffe, for defence of raine and weather.

How to graft diuers fruits on one stocke.

If thou wilt graft diuers fruits vpon one stocke, that hath as many branches as thou wilt haue graffes on, in euery branch set a graffe, in manner and forme as it is said before, and euermore chuse the graffe on the Sunne side of the tree that beareth it, and next the top if you may, and then maist

thou graffe diuers fruits in one clift, but none of them may be thicker then other, as your reason will tell you in the working.

The way to graffe all sorts of trees.

First of all it is to be noted, that all sorts of frank trees, as also wild trees of nature, may be graft with graffes, and in the scutchin, and both do wel take, but especially those trées which be of like nature, therefore it is better so to graffe: howbeit they may well grow and take of other sorts of Trees, but certaine trees be not so good, nor will prosper so well in the end.

How to graffe Apple-trees, Quince-trees, Pear-trees, and Medlar-trees.

They graffe the peare graffe on other peare stocks & apple stocks, crab or wilding stocks: the Quince and Medlar vpon the white thorne. But most commonly they vse to graffe one apple vpon another, and both peares and quinces they graffe on hawthorne and crab stocke. Another kinde of fruit called in French Saulsay, they vsed to graffe on the willow stocke, the manner thereof is hard to do, which I haue not séene, and therefore I will let it passe at this present.

How to chuse your trees for graffes.

When the trées wheras you intend to gather your graffes be small & yong, as of fiue or sixe yeares growth, doe not take the highest graff therof, nor the greatest, except it be of a small trée of two or three yeres, the which commonly hath too much of toppe or wood: otherwise not, for you shall but marre your grafting.

How you may keepe graffes a long time.

We may kéep graffs a long time good, as from Allhallowtide (so that the leaues be fallen) vnto the time of grafting, if that they be wel couered in the earth, halfe a foote déep therein, and so that none of them doe appeare without the earth.

After what manner ye ought to begin to graffe.

We may wel begin to graffe (in leauing the stock) at Christmas, or before, according to the coldnes of the time, & principally the healme or great cherry, peares, wardens, or forward

ward fruit of apples: and for medlars, it is good to tarry vnto the end of January and Februarie, vntil March, or vntil such time as ye shall see the trées begin to bud or spring.

To haue fruit without cores.

To haue fruit without cores, loke yee haue a sufficient graffe-stock, and therewith (as I said before) chuse a graffe of good Perle tree, and cut it on this manner: The ende of the graffe that is vpward next the firmament, must be thwited like the nether end of a comming graffe, & the nether end turned vpward: and this is to be done warily. This rule is true in all trees that haue stones and kernels, but a vine it behoueth to cut that is downeward next the earth, with great cunning and sleight.

How to trim your graffes.

We may graft your graffes ful as long as 2, or 3. trunchions or cut graffes, which ye may likewise graffe withall very wel, and be as good as those which do come of old wood, and oftentimes better, as to graffe a bough: for often it so happeneth a man shall find of oylets or eies hard by the old slender wood, yet better it were to cut them off with the old wood, and chuse a better & a faire place, at some other eye aforesaid, and cut your graffes in making the incision on the one side narrow, & on the other side broad, as the inner side thin, and the outside thicke, because the outside of your graffe must ioyne within the cleft, with the sappe or barke of the winde stocke that it shall be set in: see also that ye cut it smooth, as your clifts are in the stock, in ioining at euery place both euen and close, and especially the ioints or corners of the graffe on the head of the stocke, which must be well and cleane pared before, and then set fast thereon.

How to graffe vines on Cherry-trees.

If thou wilt haue a vine grow on a Cherry-tree, and haue the taste of cherries, set a vine by a cherry-tree till it grow, & in the beginning of Feuerell what time it be, make a hole thorow the Cherry-tree in what place thou wilt, and as often as thou wilt, and draw thorow the hole a branch of the vine,

vine, so that it fill the hole, and shaue away the old barke of that vine, asmuch as shall be in the hole, and put it in, so that the shauen place of the branch stop ful the hole of the Cherri-tree, and then cut away the roote ende of the vine, and wrap it well about with good earth, and binde it well with a little cloth, and kepe it wel in all things, as in other graffings: but some men leaue the roote end uncut a yeare, till it be sowred with the Cherry-tree, and then cut it away: and this is a good manner and a sure, and so it may be done with diuers trees of diuers fruits, and the grape and the vine shall haue sauor of them: and so in euery tree may be grafted another, and it is a merueilous grafting.

To make a tree beare diuers fruits.

If you will haue a tree beare diuers fruites, and of diuers colours, and diuers sauors: in the first yeare graffe in diuers branches of a Cherry-tree diuers Apples to thy liking, and leaue some of the branches ungrafted: the second yeare make holes thorow the Cherry-tree, and draw thorow those holes, vine branches, the vtter end shauen off, as is before said: and in the same manner thorow another hole red Rose, and doe therewith as before is said of the vine: and this diuersity yee may vse after your owne liking.

FINIS.

* UMASS/AMHERST *
312066 0333 2812 2

